



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**1 Chronicles**

**Version 75**

[en]

# Copyrights and Licensing

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 2.1.30

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament**

**Date:** 2022-10-11

**Version:** 0.30

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord®

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links**

**Date:** 2023-09-25

**Version:** 75

**Published by:** unfoldingWord

*unfoldingWord® Translation Notes*

*Copyright © 2022 by unfoldingWord*

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from [unfoldingword.org/utn](https://unfoldingword.org/utn)". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at [unfoldingword.org/contact/](https://unfoldingword.org/contact/).

# Table of Contents

<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Notes</b>	<b>6</b>
1 Chronicles	6
Introduction to 1 Chronicles	7
1 Chronicles 1	9
1 Chronicles 2	64
1 Chronicles 3	120
1 Chronicles 4	145
1 Chronicles 5	189
1 Chronicles 6	216
1 Chronicles 7	298
1 Chronicles 8	339
1 Chronicles 9	380
1 Chronicles 10	425
1 Chronicles 11	440
1 Chronicles 12	488
1 Chronicles 13	529
1 Chronicles 14	544
1 Chronicles 15	562
1 Chronicles 16	592
1 Chronicles 17	636
1 Chronicles 18	664
1 Chronicles 19	682
1 Chronicles 20	702
1 Chronicles 21	711
1 Chronicles 22	742
1 Chronicles 23	762
1 Chronicles 24	795
1 Chronicles 25	827
1 Chronicles 26	859
1 Chronicles 27	892
1 Chronicles 28	927
1 Chronicles 29	949
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Academy</b>	<b>980</b>
Abstract Nouns	981
Active or Passive	983
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	986
Background Information	989
Biblical Distance	992
Biblical Money	995
Doublet	997
Ellipsis	999
Euphemism	1002
Exclamations	1004
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1006
First, Second or Third Person	1008
Forms of You	1010
Hebrew Months	1011
How to Translate Names	1014

Hyperbole .....	1019
Idiom .....	1023
Introduction of a New Event .....	1025
Merism .....	1028
Metaphor .....	1030
Metonymy .....	1036
Nominal Adjectives .....	1038
Numbers .....	1040
Ordinal Numbers .....	1043
Parallelism .....	1046
Personification .....	1049
Poetry .....	1051
Quotes within Quotes .....	1054
Reflexive Pronouns .....	1057
Rhetorical Question .....	1060
Simile .....	1063
Symbolic Action .....	1066
Symbolic Language .....	1068
Synecdoche .....	1070
Textual Variants .....	1072
Translate Unknowns .....	1074
Verse Bridges .....	1077
<b>unfoldingWord® Translation Words .....</b>	<b>1079</b>
covenant .....	1080
eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever .....	1082
priest, priesthood .....	1084
temple, house, house of God .....	1086
<b>Contributors .....</b>	<b>1088</b>
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors .....	1088
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors .....	1094
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors .....	1095
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors .....	1096
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors .....	1096
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors .....	1097



## **unfoldingWord® Translation Notes**

### **1 Chronicles**

## Introduction to 1 Chronicles

### Part 1: General Introduction

#### Outline of 1 Chronicles

Lists of descendants (1:1-9:44)

- From Adam to Jacob (1:1-2:2)
- Jacob's descendants (2:2-9:44)

Saul dies and David begins to reign (10:1-29:30)

- Saul dies (10:1-14)
- David captures Jerusalem (11:1-9)
- David's mighty men (11:10-12:40)
- David prospers (13:1-22:1)
- David prepares for Solomon to build the temple (22:2-29:30)

#### What are the Books of 1 and 2 Chronicles about?

The Book of 1 Chronicles retells the line of descendants from Adam to Saul. It then gives the history of Israel during the time of David. The Book of 2 Chronicles gives the history of Israel beginning with Solomon. It ends when the Babylonian army attacks Judah and takes some of the people to Babylon. The writers of Chronicles probably wrote these books for the Jews who returned from exile in Babylon. The purpose was to teach the people to avoid disobeying God as their ancestors did.

#### How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators can use the traditional title "1 Chronicles" or "First Chronicles." You may also call this book "The Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel, Book 1" or "The First Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah and Israel."

#### Who wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles are unknown. They mention that they used other books when writing Chronicles. The names of these other books are "The Chronicles of Samuel the Seer," "The Chronicles of Nathan the Seer," "The Chronicles of Gad the Seer," "The History of Nathan the Prophet," "The Chronicles of Shemaiah the Prophet and Iddo," "The Story of the Prophet Iddo" and "The books of the kings of Judah and Israel."

#### Why are there multiple books that give the history of the kings of Israel?

The books of Chronicles and the books of Kings tell much of the same history, but they are not exactly the same. The writers of Chronicles wrote mostly about the kings of Judah who were faithful to Yahweh and his covenant. The writers wanted the Jews to think carefully about David and Solomon. They also wanted the Jews to think about how Jehoshaphat, Hezekiah, and Josiah caused their ancestors to repent and to worship Yahweh. The writers wanted to encourage the Jews and their leaders to obey the law and to honor God's covenant with them. (See: **covenant (p. 1080)**)

## Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

### Why did God punish the people of Israel?

God punished the people of Israel because they disobeyed him and worshiped false gods. God punished them with disease, disasters, and defeat in battle. However, God forgave them and caused them to prosper again if they repented and obeyed him. The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles continually reminded the readers that God punished his people because they disobeyed. They wanted the readers to understand that they must obey God.

### Why are alliances with foreign countries seen as evil in these books?

Yahweh led and protected the nation of Israel. The people of Israel should have trusted him instead of relying on other nations to protect them.

## Part 3: Important Translation Issues

### What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah.

### What does it mean to “seek God”?

The writers of 1 and 2 Chronicles often wrote about “seeking God.” To “seek God” means to make an effort to please and honor God. It can also mean to ask God for help. It does not imply that God is hidden. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

The writers used the phrase “to this day” to refer to the time when they were writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 1 Chronicles 4:41, 43; 5:26; 13:11; 20:26; 21:10; 35:25.



# **1 Chronicles 1**

## **1 Chronicles 1 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter gives the genealogies of Abraham, Esau and the early kings of Edom.

## 1 Chronicles 1:1

### Adam & Seth & Enosh

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:2

### Kenan & Mahalalel & Jared

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:3

### Enoch & Methuselah & Lamech

These are all names of men. Each man was the father or ancestor of the next man in the list. If your language has a specific way to mark this kind of list, you can use it here. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:4

### The sons of Noah were Shem, Ham, and Japheth

Some versions, including the ULT and UST, include “The sons of” in order to make it clear that Shem, Ham, and Japheth were brothers to each other and sons of Noah. Otherwise, the reader would assume that each person represented one generation farther away from Noah, their ancestor.

### Noah

Noah was Lamech’s son. Alternate translation: “Lamech’s son Noah”

## 1 Chronicles 1:5

### Gomer & Magog & Madai & Javan & Tubal & Meshek & Tiras

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:6

### Ashkenaz & Riphath & Togarmah

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:7

### Elishah & Tarshish

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Kittites & Rodanites

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Rodanites

This name is sometimes spelled “Dodanites.” (See: **Textual Variants (p.1072)**) (See: **Textual Variants (p.1072)**)



## 1 Chronicles 1:8

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 1:11

### Ludites & Anamites & Lehabites & Naphtuhites

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:12**

### **Pathrusites & Kasluhites & Philistines & Caphtorites**

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **from whom the Philistines came**

Alternate translation: "the ancestors of the Philistines"

## 1 Chronicles 1:13

### Canaan & Sidon

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hittites

This is the name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:14

### Jebusites & Amorites & Girgashites

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:15

### Hivites & Arkites & Sinites

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 1:16

### Arvadites & Zemarites & Hamathites

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:17

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:18**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:19**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 1:20

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:23**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 1:24

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:25**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:26**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:27**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 1:28

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:29**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:30**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:31**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 1:32

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:33

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except for Keturah are names of men. Keturah is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:34

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:35**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:36**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 1:37**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 1:38

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names in this verse are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:39

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men, except for Timna. Timna is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 1:40

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:41

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:42**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 1:43

### Edom & Dinhabah

These are the names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Bela & Beor

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:44

### Bela & Jobab & Zerah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Bozrah

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:45

### Jobab & Husham

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place

Alternate translation: "Husham, from the land where Teman's descendants lived, reigned after him"

### Temanites

This is the name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:46

### Husham & Hadad & Bedad

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Avith

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:47

### Hadad & Samlah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Masrekah

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 1:48

### Samlah & Shaul

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Rehoboth

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:49

### **Shaul & Baal-Hanan & Akbor**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 1:50**

### **Baal-Hanan & Akbor & Hadad & Me-Zahab**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Pau**

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Mehetabel & Matred**

These are the names of women. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:51

### Hadad & Timna & Alvah & Jetheth

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:52

### Oholibamah & Elah & Pinon

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:53

### Kenaz & Teman & Mibzar

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 1:54

### Magdiel & Iram

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Edom

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 2**

### **1 Chronicles 2 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the descendants of Judah, son of Jacob.



## 1 Chronicles 2:1

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:2

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:3

### Er & Onan & Shelah & Shua & Judah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### who were born to him by Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "his sons whom Shua's daughter, a Canaanite woman, bore" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

### in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents his judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh judged" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### Yahweh killed him

The reader should understand that Yahweh may have had a person kill Er. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:4

### Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### daughter-in-law

This refers to the wife of his son.

### Perez & Zerah & Judah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### bore him Perez and Zerah

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his sons Perez and Zerah"

### five sons

"5 sons" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:5

### Perez & Hezron & Hamul

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:6

### Zerah & Zimri & Ethan & Heman & Kalkol & Darda

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:7

### Karmi & Achar

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### what was reserved for God

what God had said he wanted the people to destroy

## 1 Chronicles 2:8

### Ethan & Azariah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 2:9

### Hezron & Jerahmeel & Ram & Caleb

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:10

### Ram & Amminadab & Nahshon & Judah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:11

### Nahshon & Salmon & Boaz

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:12

### Boaz & Obed & Jesse

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:13

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the second & the third

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the second son ... the third son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p. 999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:14

### Nethanel & Raddai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the fourth & the fifth

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the fourth son ... the fifth son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p. 999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:15

### Ozem & David

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the sixth & the seventh

The word “son” is understood. Also, the numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the sixth son ... the seventh son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:16

### General Information:

### General Information:

All names here except Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of men. Zeruiah and Abigail are the names of women.  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 2:17

### Amasa & Jether

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jether the Ishmaelite

Alternate translation: "Jether, a descendant of Ishmael"

## **1 Chronicles 2:18**

### **Caleb & Hezron & Jesher & Shobab & Ardon**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Azubah & Jerioth**

These are names of women. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:19

### Caleb & Hur

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Azubah & Ephrath

These are names of women. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:20

### Hur & Uri & Bezalel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

All names in this list are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to"

## 1 Chronicles 2:22

### Segub & Jair

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### land of Gilead

People gave the land the name of the man.

## 1 Chronicles 2:23

### Geshur & Aram

These are names of people groups named after ancestors. Translate “Aram” as in [1 Chronicles 1:17](#).

### Havvoth Jair and Kenath

These are the names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Makir & Gilead

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:24

### Hezron & Caleb & Ashhur & Tekoa

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Caleb went in to Ephrathah

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "Caleb had sexual relations with Ephrathah" (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

### Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his son"



## 1 Chronicles 2:25

### **Jerahmeel & Hezron & Ram & Bunah, Oren, Ozem, and Ahijah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:26

### Jerahmeel & Onam

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Atarah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:27

### Ram & Jerahmeel & Maaz, Jamin, and Eker

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:28

### Onam & Shammai & Jada & Nadab & Abishur

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:29

### Abishur & Ahban & Molid

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Abihail

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:30

### Nadab & Seled & Appaim

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:31

### Appaim & Ishi & Sheshan & Ahlai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:32

### Jada & Shammai & Jether & Jonathan

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 2:33

### Jonathan & Peleth & Zaza & Jerahmeel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:34

### Sheshan & Jarha

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:35

### Sheshan & Jarha & Attai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his son"

## 1 Chronicles 2:36

### Attai & Nathan & Zabad

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:37

### Zabad & Ephlal & Obed

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:38

### Obed & Jehu & Azariah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:39

### Azariah & Helez & Eleasah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:40

### Eleasah & Sismai & Shallum

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 2:41

### Shallum & Jekamiah & Elishama

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 2:42**

### **Caleb & Jerahmeel & Mesha & Ziph & Mareshah & Hebron**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **the father of Hebron**

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron"

## 1 Chronicles 2:43

### Hebron & Korah, Tappuah, Rekem, and Shema

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 2:44**

### **Shema & Raham & Jorkeam & Rekem & Shammai**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **the father of Raham, the father of Jorkeam & the father of Shammai**

Some versions read, "the founder of the clan of Hebron ... the founder of the clan of Raham, the founder of the clan of Jorkeam ... the founder of the clan of Shammai."

## 1 Chronicles 2:45

### Shammai & Maon & Beth Zur

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:46

### Caleb & Haran & Moza & Gazez

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ephah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:47

### Jahdai & Regem, Jotham, Geshan, Pelet, Ephah, and Shaaph

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:48

### Caleb & Sheber & Tirhanah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 2:49

### She also bore

Alternate translation: "She also gave birth to""

### Shaaph & Madmannah & Sheva & Makbenah & Gibeah & Caleb

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Aksah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:50

### Hur & Shobal

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### father of Kiriath Jearim

Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town.

Alternate translation: “founder of Kiriath Jearim” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:51

### Salma & Hareph

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### father of Bethlehem & father of Beth Gader

Bethlehem and Beth Gader are the names of towns. The names of the towns are metonyms for the people who live in the towns. Alternate translation: “founder of Bethlehem ... founder of Beth Gader” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 2:52

### General Information:

## General Information:

See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)** (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shobal the father of Kiriath Jearim

Shobal is the name of a man, and Kiriath Jearim is the name of a town. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Manahathites

This is the name of a clan.

## 1 Chronicles 2:53

### **Ithrites, Puthites, Shumathites & Mishraites & Zorathites & Eshtaolites**

These are the names of clans.

## 1 Chronicles 2:54

### Salma

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Bethlehem

This is the name of a town where Salma's descendants settled and represents the people living in that town.

Alternate translation: "the people of Bethlehem" (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Netophathites & Atroth Beth Joab & Manahathites & Zorites

These are names of clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 2:55**

### **Jabez**

This is the name of a town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Tirathites & Shimeathites & Sucathites & Kenites**

These are names of clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **the Kenites who came from Hammath**

Alternate translation: "the Kenites who descended from Hamath"

### **Hammath & Rekab**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 3**

### **1 Chronicles 3 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the descendants of King David.



## 1 Chronicles 3:1

### David

David was a son of Jesse, who was a descendant of Judah ([1 Chronicles 2:15](#)).

### Ahinoam & Abigail

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Daniel

This man has the same name as an Israelite prophet but is a different person.

## 1 Chronicles 3:2

### Maakah & Haggith

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Talmai

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:3

### Abital & Eglah

These are the names of women who were David's wives. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shephatiah & Ithream

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 3:4**

### **where he reigned seven years and six months**

This can also be translated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "David reigned there seven years and six months"

### **thirty-three years**

"33 years" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:5

### Ammiel & Shammua & Shobab & Nathan

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:6

### Ibhar, Elishua, Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:7

### Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:8

### Elishama & Eliada & Eliphelet

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 3:9

### Tamar

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:10

### General Information:

## General Information:

This is the beginning of the list of David's descendants who became king. All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Solomon's son was Rehoboam. Rehoboam's son was Abijah**

Solomon had more than one son. The same is true of other men in the list. Alternate translation: "Solomon was the father of Rehoboam. Rehoboam was the father of Abijah"

## **1 Chronicles 3:11**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 3:12**

### **Azariah**

This was another name for Uzziah, the better-known name for this king. Translators may decide to use “Uzziah” everywhere for this king.

## **1 Chronicles 3:13**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 3:14**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 3:15**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 3:16**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 3:17

### Jehoiachin & Shealtiel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jehoiachin

Some versions have "Jeconiah," which is a variation of "Jehoiachin."

### the captive

This may be a title that was given to Jehoiachin because he was taken into captivity. However, some versions regard the word as "Assir," the name of one of his sons.

## 1 Chronicles 3:18

### General Information:

### General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:19

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names in this list except Shelomith are the names of men. Shelomith is a woman's name. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:20

### General Information:

### General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Obadiah

This man has the same name as the prophet Obadiah but is a different person. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### further descendants were Arnan, Obadiah, and Shekaniah

Different versions put these people into different relationships with each other because the Hebrew is not very clear about them.

## 1 Chronicles 3:22

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:23

### General Information:

### General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 3:24

### General Information:

### General Information:

These are all names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## **1 Chronicles 4**

### **1 Chronicles 4 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the other descendants of Judah.

## 1 Chronicles 4:1

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names in this list are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:2

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names in this list except the Zorathites are the names of men. Zorathites is the name of a people group who took their name from the town of Zorah where they lived. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:3

### Jezreel & Ishma & Idbash

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hazzelelponi

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:4

### Gedor & Hushah

These are names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Peniel & Ezer & Hur

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### These were descendants of Hur

“Peniel and Ezer were descendants of Hur.” This points forward to the list that will follow.

### Ephrathah

This is the name of a woman. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 2:50](#).

## 1 Chronicles 4:5

### Ashhur & Tekoa

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:24](#).

### Helah & Naarah

These are the names of women. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:6

### bore him

Alternate translation: "gave birth to his sons"

### Ahuzzam & Hephher

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Temeni & Haahashtari

These are understood here as the names of men. However, some versions understand them as the names of clans that were begun by the sons of Ashhur.

## 1 Chronicles 4:7

### Zereth & Zohar & Ethnan

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## **1 Chronicles 4:8**

### **Koz & Anub & Hazzobebah & Aharhel & Harum**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **and of the clans descended from Aharhel son of Harum**

A new sentence can start here. "Koz also became the ancestor of Harum and the clans that descended from Harum's son Aharhel"

## 1 Chronicles 4:9

### Jabez

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:10

### expand my territory

Alternate translation: "give me more land"

### your hand will be with me

Possible meanings are that God's **hand**: is: (1) a metonym for his guidance, his power, or his protection. Alternate translation: "you will guide me" or "you will make me prosper" or "you will protect me" or (2) a synecdoche for himself. Alternate translation: "you will be with me" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### granted him his prayer

The words "his prayer" are a metonym for what Jabez asked in the prayer. Alternate translation: "did what Jabez had asked him to do" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:11

### Kelub & Shuhah & Mehir & Eshton

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:12

### Eshton & Beth Rapha & Paseah & Tehinnah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Tehinnah, the father of Ir Nahash

It appears that Ir Nahash may have been a city. Alternate translation: “Tehinnah, the founder of the city of Nahash” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Nahash & Rekah

These are the names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:13

### General Information:

### General Information:

It may be helpful to create a verse bridge and to put verse 15 together with verse 13 since Kenaz was a descendant of Jephunneh and Caleb. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

### Kenaz & Othniel & Seraiah & Hathath & Meonothai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:14

### Meonothai & Ophrah & Joab

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ge-Harashim, whose people were craftsmen

Ge-Harashim means “Valley of Craftsmen.” This can be made explicit with an explanation. Alternate translation: “Ge-Harashim, which means ‘Craftsmen’s Valley.’ It was called this because its people were craftsmen” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### craftsmen

people skilled at making or building things

## 1 Chronicles 4:15

### Jephunneh & Iru & Elah & Naam & Kenaz

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 4:16

### Jehallelel & Ziph & Ziphah & Tiria & Asarel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:17

### General Information:

## General Information:

You may want to combine the information in 1 Chronicles 4:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

### **Ezrah & Jether & Mered & Epher & Jalon & Miriam & Shammai & Ishbah & Eshtemoa**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **These were the sons of Bithiah**

The word “these” refers to Miriam, Shammai, and Ishbah. They were the sons Bithiah bore for her husband Mered.

### **Bithiah**

This is the name of a woman.

## **1 Chronicles 4:18**

### **Jered & Gedor & Heber & Soko & Jekuthiel & Zanoah**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Mered's Judahite wife**

The Hebrew text says, "His Judahite wife," but most versions understand "his" to refer to Mered. This refers to a different wife of Mered, in addition to Bithiah.

## 1 Chronicles 4:19

### Hodiah & Naham & Keilah & Eshtemoa

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Garmite

someone from the Gar people group (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Maakathite

someone from the region of Maacah, which is also called Maacath (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 4:20**

### **Shimon & Amnon & Rinnah & Ben-Hanan & Tilon & Ishi & Zoheth & Ben-Zoheth**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:21

### Shelah & Er & Laadah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Lekah & Mareshah & Beth Ashbea

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### linen workers

people who made clothing out of a fabric made from crushed reeds (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## **1 Chronicles 4:22**

### **Jokim & Joash & Saraph**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Kozebe & Jashubi Lehem**

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:23

### the potters

the people who make containers out of clay

### Netaim & Gederah

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 4:24

### Nemuel & Jamin & Jarib & Zerah & Shaul

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:25

### Shallum & Mibsam & Mishma

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:26

### Mishma & Hammuel & Zakkur & Shimei

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Zakkur his grandson

the son of Mishma's son

### great-grandson

the son of Mishma's grandson

## **1 Chronicles 4:27**

### **sixteen sons and six daughters**

“16 sons and 6 daughters” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:28

### Moladah & Hazar Shual

These are the names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:29

### Bilhah & Ezem & Tolad

These are the names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:30

### Bethuel & Hormah & Ziklag

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:31

### Beth Markaboth & Hazar Susim & Beth Biri & Shaaraim

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 4:32

### Etam & Ain & Rimmon & Token & Ashan

These are the names of villages. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:33

### outlying villages

the villages that were near but outside the main town

### Baalath

This is the name of a town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:34

### Meshobab & Jamlech & Joshah & Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:35

### Joel & Jehu & Joshibiah & Seraiah & Asiel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 4:36**

### **Elioenai & Jaakobah & Jeshohaiah & Asaiah & Adiel & Jesimiel & Benaiah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:37

### Ziza & Shiphi & Allon & Jedaiah & Shimri & Shemaiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:38

### These mentioned by name were leaders

Alternate translation: "These men were leaders"

### their clans increased greatly

The clan is a metonym for the people in the clan. Alternate translation: "the number of people in their clans increased greatly" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 4:39

### Gedor

This is the name of a town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### pasture for their flocks

an area of land where their flocks could feed on the grass



## **1 Chronicles 4:40**

### **abundant and good pasture**

Alternate translation: "pastures with much good food for their animals"

### **Hamites**

a people group, descendants of Ham

## 1 Chronicles 4:41

### Meunites

a people group. Alternate translation: “descendants of Meun” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 4:42**

### **five hundred men**

“500 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **Pelathiah & Neariah & Rephaiah & Uzziel & Ishi**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 4:43**

### **the rest of the Amalekite refugees**

Alternate translation: "the remaining Amalekite refugees"

### **refugees**

people who are forced to leave their home country

### **to this day**

"from then until now." This refers to the day when the author was writing this account.

## **1 Chronicles 5**

### **1 Chronicles 5 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the descendants of Jacob's sons who lived east of the Jordan River: Reuben, Gad and Manasseh.

## 1 Chronicles 5:1

### now Reuben

The word “now” is used here to mark the change from the lists of descendants to background information about Reuben. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

### but his birthright was given to the sons of Joseph son of Israel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “but Israel gave Reuben’s birthright to the sons of Joseph, another of Israel’s sons” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Reuben had defiled his father’s couch

This is a polite way to speak about Reuben sleeping with his father’s secondary wife. The couch is the place where a man and his wife would have slept together. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

### So he is not recorded as being the oldest son

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “So the family history does not list Reuben as the oldest son” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:2

### General Information:

### General Information:

This verse finishes the background information about Reuben. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:3

### Hanok & Pallu & Hezron & Karmi

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 5:4

### Joel & Shemaiah & Gog & Shimei

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:5

### Shimei & Micah & Reaiah & Baal

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:6

### Baal & Beerah & Tiglath-Pileser

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:7

### listed according to their genealogical records

This can start a new sentence: "Their genealogical records list them as" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### genealogical records

records that show how people in a family are related to each other

### Jeiel & Zechariah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 5:8**

### **Bela & Azaz & Shema**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Aroer & Nebo & Baal Meon**

These are the names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 5:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 5:10

### the Hagrites

This is a name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

### lived in the Hagrites' tents

The tents are a synecdoche for the land and the buildings on the land. Alternate translation: “took over all the Hagrites’ land and buildings” or “lived in all the Hagrite territory” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p. 1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:11

### Salekah

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## **1 Chronicles 5:12**

### **Joel & Shapham & Janai & Shaphat**

These are names of men.

## **1 Chronicles 5:13**

**Michael & Meshullam & Sheba & Jorai & Jakan & Zia & Eber**

These are names of men.

## 1 Chronicles 5:14

**Abihail & Huri & Jaroah & Gilead & Michael & Jeshishai & Jahdo & Buz**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:15

### Ahi & Abdiel & Guni

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:16

### They lived

Alternate translation: "The tribe of Gad lived"

### the pasturelands

the areas of land where animals feed on grass

## 1 Chronicles 5:17

### All these were listed by genealogical records

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Genealogical records listed them all" or "The records of their family's ancestry listed them all" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### All these

It is not clear how many of the preceding people this refers to.

## 1 Chronicles 5:18

### Reubenites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Rueben. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Gadites

This refers to the people from the tribe of Gad.

### 44,760 soldiers

“forty-four thousand seven hundred and sixty soldiers” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### who carried shield and sword, and who drew the bow

The soldiers are described as skilled in warfare by the weapons they carried. Alternate translation: “who were all trained to fight well in battles” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## **1 Chronicles 5:19**

### **Hagrites & Jetur & Naphish & Nodab**

These are the names of people groups.



## **1 Chronicles 5:20**

### **the Israelites cried out to God**

Alternate translation: “the Israelites prayed to God for help”

## 1 Chronicles 5:21

### They captured their animals

Alternate translation: "The Israelites captured the Hagrites' animals"

### fifty thousand camels

"50,000 camels" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### 250,000 sheep

"two hundred and fifty thousand sheep" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### two thousand donkeys

"2,000 donkeys" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### 100,000 men

"one hundred thousand men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 5:22

### the battle was from God

God's help in battle is described as if he were the one who caused the battle. Alternate translation: "God helped them"

## 1 Chronicles 5:23

### Baal Hermon & Senir

These are the names of mountains. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 5:24**

### **Epher & Ishi & Eliel & Azriel & Jeremiah & Hodaviah & Jahdiel**

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **fathers' houses**

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

## **1 Chronicles 5:25**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 5:26

### Pul & Tiglath-Pileser

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Reubenites & Gadites

These are the names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Halah & Habor & Hara

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Gozan

This is the name of a river. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

## **1 Chronicles 6**

### **1 Chronicles 6 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the descendants of Levi.



## 1 Chronicles 6:1

### Gershon & Kohath & Merari

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:2

### Kothath & Amram & Izhar & Hebron & Uzziel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 6:3**

### **Amram & Nadab & Abihu & Eleazar & Ithamar**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:4

### Eleazar & Abishua

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:5

### Abishua & Bukki & Uzzi

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:6

### Uzzi & Zerahiah & Meraioth

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:7

### Meraioth & Amariah & Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:8

### Ahitub & Zadok & Ahimaaz

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 6:9

### Ahimaaz & Johanan

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:10

### Solomon built

The reader should understand that Solomon probably hired workers to do the work. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:11

### Amariah & Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:12

### Ahitub & Zadok & Shallum

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:13

### Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:14

### Seraiah & Jozadak

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:15

### exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar

The power Nebuchadnezzar has through his army is described as the part of his body ("hand") he uses to direct his army. Alternate translation: "allowed Nebuchadnezzar's army to defeat the armies of Judah and Jerusalem and take the people into captivity" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:16

### Gershon & Kohath & Merari

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).



## 1 Chronicles 6:17

### Libni & Shimei

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:18

### Amram & Izhar & Hebron & Uzziel

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:2](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:19

### Merari & Mahli & Mushi

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:20

### Libni & Jahath & Zimmah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:21

### Joah & Iddo & Zerah & Jeatherai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:22

### Amminadab & Korah & Assir

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:23

### Elkanah & Ebiasaph & Assir

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:24

### Tahath & Uriel & Uzziah & Shaul

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 6:25

### Elkanah & Amasai & Ahimoth

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:26

### Elkanah & Zophai & Nahath

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:27

### Eliab & Jeroham & Elkanah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:28

### Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### second-born

the second son

## 1 Chronicles 6:29

### Merari & Mahli & Libni & Shimei & Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:30

### Shimea & Haggiah & Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 6:31**

### **the house of Yahweh**

“where people met with Yahweh” This was a tent in David’s time.

### **the ark came to rest there**

Alternate translation: “the people of Israel placed the ark there”

## 1 Chronicles 6:32

### the tabernacle, the tent of meeting

This could mean: (1) that “the tent of meeting” and “the tabernacle” are two names for the same thing or (2) the tabernacle is part of the tent of meeting, “the sanctuary of the tent of meeting”

### They fulfilled their duties

Alternate translation: “They did their work” or “They did their various kinds of work”

### according to the instructions given to them

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “according to the instructions that David gave them” or “according to the instructions they received” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 6:33

### These were those

Alternate translation: "These were the musicians"

### Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### going back in time

This means the list is going in order from the most recent to the oldest.

### Heman

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:34

### Jeroham & Eliel & Toah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Elkanah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:35

### Toah & Zuph & Mahath

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Elkanah & Amasai

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:36

### Amasai & Elkanah

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:25](#).

### Joel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:37

### Tahath & Assir & Ebiasaph

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:38

### Izhar & Kohath

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:39

### Heman's colleague

Alternate translation: "Heman's fellow worker"

### who stood at his right hand

The authority of a person is described by where they stand. The right side of a person is the place where the person with the most authority stands. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Berekiah & Shimea

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:40

### Shimea & Michael & Baaseiah & Malkijah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 6:41

### Malkijah & Ethni & Zerah & Adaiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:42

### Adaiah & Ethan & Zimmah & Shimei

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:43

### Shimei & Jahath & Gershon

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:44

### General Information:

## General Information:

See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)** (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### At Heman's left hand

Alternate translation: "Standing on Heman's left side"

### his colleagues

Alternate translation: "his fellow workers"

### Heman & Ethan

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 2:6](#).

### Merari

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

### Kishi & Abdi & Malluk

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:45

### Malluk & Hashabiah & Amaziah & Hilkiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:46

### Hilkiah & Amzi & Bani & Shemer

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:47

### Mahli & Mushi

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 6:19](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:48

### **Their associates, the Levites, were assigned to do**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "God had assigned their associates, the Levites, to do" or "It was the duty of their fellow workers, the Levites, to do" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## **1 Chronicles 6:49**

### **These offerings made atonement for Israel**

Alternate translation: "They offered these things to make atonement for the sins of the people of Israel"

## 1 Chronicles 6:50

### Aaron's descendants are reckoned as follows

Alternate translation: "These were the descendants of Aaron"

### Eleazar & Abishua

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:51

### Bukki & Uzzi & Zerahiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:52

### Meraioth & Amariah & Ahitub

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:53

### Ahimaaz

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:54

### These are the locations where Aaron's descendants were assigned to live

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "These are the places where God assigned Aaron's descendants to live" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### for the descendants of Aaron & Kohathites

Alternate translation: "where the descendants of Aaron ... Kohathites were to live"

### Kohathites (the first lot was theirs)

The Israelites drew lots to decide where people would live. Alternate translation: "Kohathites. The first lot that they drew was theirs" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:55

### To them they gave Hebron

Alternate translation: "They gave Hebron to the Kohathites"

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## **1 Chronicles 6:56**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 6:57

### Hebron & Libnah & Jattir & Eshtemoa

These are names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:58

### Hilen & Debir

These are names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:59

### Ashan & Juttah & Beth Shemesh

These are names of towns. (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:60

### Geba & Alemeth & Anathoth

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 6:61**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 6:62

**To Gershon's descendants in their various clans were given thirteen cities**

"The clans of Gershon's descendants gained 13 cities" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:63

### Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:64

### their pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).



## 1 Chronicles 6:65

### the towns mentioned earlier

The towns mentioned in [1 Chronicles 6:55](#) and [1 Chronicles 6:60](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:66

### Kohathites

This is the name of a people group, the descendants of Kohath ([1 Chronicles 6:1](#)). See how you translated this family name in [1 Chronicles 6:33](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:67

### Shechem & Gezer

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:68

### Jokmeam & Beth Horon

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:69

### Aijalon & Gath Rimmon

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:70

### Aner & Bileam

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:71

### Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

### Golan & Ashtaroth

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:72

### Kedesh & Daberath

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 6:73

### Ramoth & Anem

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:74

### Issachar received from the tribe of Asher

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Asher gave Issachar" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Mashal & Abdon

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:75

### Hukok & Rehob

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:76

### They received from the tribe of Naphtali

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Naphtali gave them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Kedesh & Hammon & Kiriathaim

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:77

### The rest & descendants received from the tribe of Zebulun

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Zebulun gave the rest ... descendants"  
(See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Merari's

Translate "Merari" as in [1 Chronicles 6:1](#).

### Jokneam & Kartah & Rimmono & Tabor

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 6:78

### General Information:

## General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

### from the tribe of Reuben, across & Jericho, they received

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “the tribe of Reuben, across ... Jericho, gave them” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Bezer & Jahzah

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:79

### General Information:

## General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 6:78-79 can be rearranged as in the UST so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

### Kedemoth & Mephaath

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 6:80

### The Levites received from the tribe of Gad

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The tribe of Gad gave the Levites" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Ramoth & Mahanaim

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### its pasturelands

the land with grass for animals to eat. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 5:16](#).



## 1 Chronicles 6:81

### Heshbon & Jazer

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 7**

### **1 Chronicles 7 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the descendants of Issachar, Benjamin, Ephraim, Asher, and Manasseh living west of the Jordan River.

## 1 Chronicles 7:1

### Issachar & Tola, Puah, Jashub & Shimron

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:2

### General Information:

## General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### heads of their fathers' houses

The words "father's houses" refers to extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans."

### They numbered 22,600

"They numbered twenty-two thousand six hundred" or "There were 22,600 men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### in the days of David

Alternate translation: "during David's life" or "while David was alive"

## 1 Chronicles 7:3

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 7:4**

### **Along with them they had**

Another possible meaning is "Among them were."

### **thirty-six thousand troops for battle**

"36,000 soldiers who were ready for battle" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:5

### eighty-seven thousand fighting men

"87,000 fighting men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:6

### Bela & Beker & Jediael

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 7:7

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### 22,034 fighting men

“twenty-two thousand and thirty-four” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls “clans”

## 1 Chronicles 7:8

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:9

### 20,200 heads of their fathers' houses

“twenty thousand two hundred family leaders” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:10

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:11

### Jediael

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Listed in their clan lists were 17,200

Alternate translation: "The clan lists contained 17,200"

### 17,200 heads of houses

"seventeen thousand two hundred heads of houses" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:12

### Ir & Aher

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shuppites & Huppites & Hushites

These are names of clans of people. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:13

### Jahziel, Guni, Jezer, and Shillem

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Bilhah's grandsons

"the sons of Bilhah's son." Bilhah is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:14

### Asriel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Aramean concubine bore

Alternate translation: "Aramean concubine gave birth to"

### Makir, Gilead's father

These are names of men. See how you translated "Makir, father of Gilead" in [1 Chronicles 2:21](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 7:15

### Makir & Zelophehad

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Huppites & Shuppites

See how you translated these names in [1 Chronicles 7:12](#).

### Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:16

### Makir & Peresh & Sheresh & Ulam & Rakem

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:17

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:18

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except Hammoleketh are names of men. Hammoleketh is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:19

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:20

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except Gath are names of men. Gath is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ezer and Elead were killed by men of Gath, natives in the land

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Men of Gath, the natives in the land, killed Ezer and Elead" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### they went to steal their cattle

Alternate translation: "the brothers went to steal the cattle from the people of Gath"

## **1 Chronicles 7:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 7:23

### He went in to his wife

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he had sexual relations with his wife" (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

### She conceived and bore a son

Alternate translation: "She became pregnant and gave birth to a son"

### Ephraim & Beriah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### called him

Alternate translation: "named him"

## 1 Chronicles 7:24

### Sheerah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Upper Beth Horon & Uzen Sheerah

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:25

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:26

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:27

### Elishama & Nun

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:28

### General Information:

## General Information:

All of the names listed here are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Their possessions and residences were Bethel & villages

The abstract nouns “possessions” and “residences” can be translated with verbal phrases. Alternate translation: “They possessed and resided in Bethel ... villages” or “They owned and lived in Bethel ... villages” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## **1 Chronicles 7:29**

### **Beth Shan & Taanach & Megiddo & Dor**

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **In these towns the descendants of Joseph son of Israel lived**

Alternate translation: "The descendants of Joseph, son of Israel, lived in these towns"

## 1 Chronicles 7:30

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except Serah are names of men. Serah is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 7:31

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:32

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except Shua are names of men. Shua is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:33

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:34

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:35

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:36

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:37

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:38

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 7:39

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 7:40

### Asher

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

### distinguished men

Alternate translation: "important men"

### There were twenty-six thousand men listed who were fit for military service, according to their numbered lists

"According to the clan records, there were 26,000 men who were able to serve in the military" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 8**

### **1 Chronicles 8 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the genealogy of Saul's family.

## 1 Chronicles 8:1

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:2

### Nohah & Rapha

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:3

### Bela & Addar, Gera, Abihud

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:4

### Abishua, Naaman, Ahoah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:5

### Gera, Shephuphan & Hiram

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 8:6

### Ehud

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

### Geba & Manahath

These are names of towns. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### were compelled to move

Alternate translation: "needed to move" or "had to move"

## 1 Chronicles 8:7

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:8

### Shaharaim

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hushim & Baara

These are names of women. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:9

### Shaharaim & Jobab & Zibia & Mesha & Malkam

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### By his wife Hodesh, Shaharaim became the father of

Alternate translation: "Shaharaim and his wife Hodesh had the following sons:"

### Hodesh

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:10

### Jeuz & Sakia & Mirmah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

## 1 Chronicles 8:11

### Abitub & Elpaal

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hushim

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 8:12**

### **Elpaal & Eber & Misham & Shemed**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Ono & Lod**

These are names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:13

### Beriah & Shema

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

### Aijalon & Gath

These are names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 8:14

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:15

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:16

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:17

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### General Information:

### General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:17-18 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:18

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:19

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### General Information:

### General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:20

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### General Information:

### General Information:

The information in 1 Chronicles 8:19-21 has been rearranged so its meaning can be more easily understood. All of the names here are names of men. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#)) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 8:22

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### General Information:

### General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:22-25 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:23

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:24

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:25

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:26

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### General Information:

### General Information:

You can combine the information in 1 Chronicles 8:26-27 into one verse so its meaning can be more easily understood. (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**) (See: **Verse Bridges (p.1077)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:27

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:28

### **fathers' houses**

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls “clans”

## 1 Chronicles 8:29

### The father of Gibeon, Jeiel, whose wife's name was Maakah, lived in Gibeon

Here "father of" refers to Jeiel's status as the leading person in the city of Gibeon. Alternate translation: "Jeiel, the leader of Gibeon, lived in Gibeon. His wife's name was Maakah" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

#### Gibeon

This is the name of a town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

#### Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

#### Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## **1 Chronicles 8:30**

### **His firstborn**

Alternate translation: "Jeiel's first son"

### **Abdon & Zur & Kish & Baal & Nadab**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:31

### Gedor & Ahio & Zeker

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:32

### Jeiel & Mikloth & Shimeah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:33

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:34

### Jonathan & Merib-Baal & Micah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:35

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:36

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:37

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 8:38

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:39

### General Information:

## General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jeush the second, and Eliphelet the third

“Jeush, who was born after Ulam, and Eliphelet, who was born after Jeush” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## 1 Chronicles 8:40

### Ulam

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### many sons and grandsons, a total of 150

“a total of one hundred fifty sons and grandsons” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 9**

### **1 Chronicles 9 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter records the genealogy of the people who returned to Jerusalem after the exile and the family of Saul.

## 1 Chronicles 9:1

### **all Israel was recorded in genealogies**

This can be translated in active form. The reader should understand that the people who wrote the genealogies included the names of the people who had already died. Alternate translation: “The Israelites recorded all of themselves in genealogies” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **genealogies**

family records that name ancestors and descendants

### **They were recorded in the book & Israel**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “They wrote the names in the book ... Israel” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **the book of the kings of Israel**

This refers to a book that no longer exists.

### **they were carried away in exile**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Babylonians carried them away in exile” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 9:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 9:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 9:4

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 9:5

### Shelanites

This is the name of a people group descended from Shelah. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Asaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:6

### Zerah & Jeuel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### numbered 690

“numbered six hundred ninety people” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:7

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:8

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

# 1 Chronicles 9:9

## numbered 956

“numbered nine hundred and fifty-six people” (See: [[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers]] and [[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis]]) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## heads of fathers' houses for their fathers' houses

Extended families are people related to each other who usually live in different houses, what the UST calls “clans.”  
Alternate translation: “leaders of their extended families”

## 1 Chronicles 9:10

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:11

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

## 1 Chronicles 9:12

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 9:13

### They were very capable men in the work

Alternate translation: "These capable men worked"

### the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

### fathers' houses

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, clans

### numbered 1,760

"numbered one thousand and sixty priests" or "numbered seventeen hundred and sixty priests" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:14

### General Information:

## General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### among the descendants

Alternate translation: "one of the descendants"

## 1 Chronicles 9:15

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:16

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here except "Netophathites" are the names of men. The Netophathites were a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 9:17**

### **The doorkeepers were**

Alternate translation: "The guards were" or "The gatekeepers were"

### **Shallum & Akkub & Talmon & Ahiman**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:18

**they stood guard at the king's gate on the east side for the camp of Levi's descendants**

Alternate translation: "Levi's descendants guarded the king's gate on the east side of their camp"

## 1 Chronicles 9:19

### Shallum & Kore & Ebiasaph

These are all the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Korahites

descendants of Korah (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the door to the tent & the entrance

These phrases both refer to the entrance of the tent of meeting, or the tabernacle.

### the tent

This is a metonym for the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:20

### Eleazar

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### in charge of them

“in charge of the Korahites” (1 [Chronicles 9:19](#))



## 1 Chronicles 9:21

### Meshelemiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the tent of meeting

The building where the Israelites prayed and offered sacrifices to God was sometimes called “the tent of meeting” in memory of the tent where Moses met with God when he and the Israelites were in the wilderness many years before this. Alternate translation: “the tent of meeting, that is, the temple”

# 1 Chronicles 9:22

## General Information:

## General Information:

(See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### who were chosen as gatekeepers

It is not clear who chose these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "whom they had chosen to be gatekeepers" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### numbered 212

"numbered two hundred and twelve" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Their names were recorded in the people's records in their villages

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The records in peoples' villages included the names of these men" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:23

### their children

Alternate translation: "their descendants"

## 1 Chronicles 9:24

### gatekeepers were posted

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “men guarded the entrances” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### on all four sides, toward the east, west, north, and south

The words “east, west, north, and south” explain the words “all four sides.”

## 1 Chronicles 9:25

### Their brothers

Alternate translation: "The guards' brothers"

### came in for seven-day rotations, in turn

"would come to help for 7-day periods, taking turns" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:26

### the four leaders & were assigned to guard the rooms

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "they assigned the four leaders ... to guard the rooms" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### the house of God

the second temple, which the people built after they returned from Babylon

## **1 Chronicles 9:27**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 9:28

### Some of them

Alternate translation: "Some of the guards"

### **they counted the articles when they were brought in and when they were taken out**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "they counted the articles that people took out to use, and they counted the articles when people brought them back" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 9:29

### Some of them also were assigned to take care of

It is not clear who assigned these men, so if you have to translate in active form, use your language's most general way of doing so. Alternate translation: "The leaders also assigned some of them to take care of" or "Some of them also took care of" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 9:30**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 9:31

### Mattithiah & Shallum

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Korahite

This is the name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:32

### Kohathites

This is the name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### bread of the presence

See the translationWord page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.”

## **1 Chronicles 9:33**

### **fathers' houses**

extended families, people related to each other who usually lived in different houses, what the UST calls "clans"

### **they were free from work**

Alternate translation: "they did not have to do other work"

### **carry out their assigned tasks**

Alternate translation: "complete the tasks they needed to do"

### **day and night**

This means "at all times" and can be translated using a phrase or word from your language or culture that gives the same meaning. (See: **Merism (p.1028)**) (See: **Merism (p.1028)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:34

**These were leaders of fathers' houses among the Levites, as listed in their genealogical records**

Alternate translation: "The family history lists included the names of these Levite family leaders"

## 1 Chronicles 9:35

### Gibeon & Gibeon

Alternate translation: "the man Gibeon ... the town of Gibeon"

### Jeiel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Maakah

This is the name of a woman. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:36

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 9:37

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:38

### Mikloth & Shimeam

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:39

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:40

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:41

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:42

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:43

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 9:44

### General Information:

### General Information:

All of the names here are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## **1 Chronicles 10**

### **1 Chronicles 10 General Notes**

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **The death of Saul**

Saul died because he disobeyed God.

## 1 Chronicles 10:1

### **Every man of Israel fled from before the Philistines and fell down dead on Mount Gilboa**

It is implied that these men were Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “The whole army of Israel ran away from the Philistines” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### **Every man of Israel & fell down dead**

This is probably a generalization. It seems that while all the soldiers did run away, not all of them died. Alternate translation: “Every man of Israel ... most of them died” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:2

### Abinadab & Malki-Shua

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 8:33](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 10:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 10:4

### thrust me through with it

The action of stabbing is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: “kill me with it” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### these uncircumcised will come

The nominal adjective “uncircumcised” can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “these people who are uncircumcised will come” or “these uncircumcised people will come” (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1038)**) (See: **Nominal Adjectives (p.1038)**)

### these uncircumcised

Here “uncircumcised” represents people who do not belong to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “these people who do not belong to Yahweh” or “these heathen Philistines” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### fell on it

Saul probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. Alternate translation: “killed himself with it” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:5

### fell on his sword

He probably stuck the handle into the ground and leaned on the point so the sword would go through his body as he fell down. The action is a metonym for the result, death. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 10:4](#).

Alternate translation: "killed himself with his sword" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:6

### and his three sons

The word “died” is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated. Alternate translation: “and his 3 sons died” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p. 999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:7

### When every man of Israel

This is probably a generalization. Alternate translation: “When the men of Israel” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### they had fled

Alternate translation: “the Israelite soldiers had fled”

### the Philistines came and lived in them

“the Philistines came and lived in the cities from which the Israelites had fled.” This probably happened after the events in verses 8-12.



## 1 Chronicles 10:8

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### to strip the dead

Alternate translation: "to take everything of value off of the dead bodies"

### Saul and his sons fallen

Here "fallen" is a polite way to refer to someone who died in battle. Alternate translation: "Saul and his sons dead" (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:9

### They stripped him

Alternate translation: "The Philistines removed everything from Saul's body"

### to carry the news to their idols and to the people

They told the people what had happened and praised their idols in prayer.

### to carry the news

A person telling others about something that has happened is spoken of as if the person were carrying a solid object and giving it to those other people. Alternate translation: "to tell what had happened" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:10

### They put his armor

Alternate translation: "The Philistines put Saul's armor"

### Dagon

This is the name of a false god. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:11

### When all Jabesh Gilead heard of all that the Philistines

Both instances of the word “all” are generalizations. The name of the town is a metonym for the people who live in the town, and the people group name is a metonym for that people group's soldiers. Alternate translation: “When the people of Jabesh Gilead heard what the soldiers of the Philistine army” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a town in the region of Gilead. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:12

### their bones

The bones are a synecdoche for the dead bodies. Alternate translation: “their bodies” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### seven days

“7 days” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 10:13

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

## 1 Chronicles 10:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Verses 13 and 14 give a summary of why Saul died. If your language has a way of showing that this is not part of the story line, you could use it here.

### **did not seek guidance from Yahweh**

Alternate translation: "did not ask Yahweh to guide him"

### **turned over the kingdom to David son of Jesse**

Here "turned over the kingdom" is an idiom that means to give someone authority over a kingdom. Alternate translation: "made David, son of Jesse, king" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

# **1 Chronicles 11**

## **1 Chronicles 11 General Notes**

### **Structure and formatting**

The story of David begins here and continues throughout the remainder of this book.

### **Special concepts in this chapter**

#### **King David the military leader**

David was made the king of all Israel and was the leader of their army. He conquered Jerusalem and strengthened its defenses. He had many brave men in his army that did great deeds. (See: [\[\[rc://\\*/tw/dict/bible/kt/works\]\]](#))



## 1 Chronicles 11:1

### **all Israel came to David**

This is a generalization that means people from every tribe in Israel came to David, but not every individual. Alternate translation: “people from throughout Israel came to David” or “people from every tribe in Israel came to David” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### **we are your flesh and bone**

This idiom means that they are relatives. Alternate translation: “we are your relatives” or “we have the same ancestors as you” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:2

### In the recent past

This is historical information. Saul had been their king before David. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

### You will shepherd my people Israel, and you will become a ruler over my people Israel

These two clauses mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh had chosen David to be king. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### You will shepherd my people Israel

Here ruling over the people is spoken of as shepherding them. Alternate translation: “You will care for my people Israel” or “You will lead my people Israel” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:3

### They anointed David king over Israel

To “anoint” is a symbolic act to show that they recognized that God had chosen David as king. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

### the word of Yahweh that had been declared by Samuel

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the word of Yahweh that Samuel had declared” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:4

### David and all Israel

Here the phrase “all Israel” represents the entire Israelite army. Alternate translation: “David and all the Israelite army” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Now the Jebusites & were there

The word “now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Jerusalem. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:5

### David took the stronghold of Zion

Here the word "took" is an idiom that means "captured" or "conquered." Since David led the army, his name here is a synecdoche for the whole army who attacked the city. Alternate translation: "David captured the stronghold of Zion" or "David and the Israelite army captured the stronghold of Zion" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### the stronghold of Zion & the city of David

Both of these names refer to Jerusalem.

## 1 Chronicles 11:6

### Zeruiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### so he was made the chief

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so David made Joab the chief" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 11:7**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 11:8

### He built the city all around & Joab restored the rest of the city

The word “he” refers to David. The reader should understand that David and Joab were probably in charge of other men who made the fortifications. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the Millo

This likely refers to a terraced structure that consisted of retaining walls with dirt filled in behind them. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)



## **1 Chronicles 11:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 11:10

### These were the leaders David had

Alternate translation: "These were the leaders of David's warriors"

### who showed themselves strong with him in his kingdom & to make him king

This phrase means that both the leaders of David's army, and the full army, helped David to establish himself as king over Israel. Alternate translation: "who strongly supported David's kingdom ... to make him king" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:11

### Jashobeam

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### a Hachmonite

This refers to a person from the Hachmon clan. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### on one occasion

Alternate translation: "in one battle"

## 1 Chronicles 11:12

### After him

Alternate translation: "After Jashobeam"

### Eleazar & Dodo

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the Ahohite

The "Ahohites" is the name of a people group. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:13

### Pas Dammim

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:14

### They stood in the middle of the field

Alternate translation: "David and Eleazar stood in the middle of the field"

### cut down the Philistines

This means that they killed the Philistine soldiers with their swords. Alternate translation: "killed the Philistines"  
(See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:15

### three of the thirty

“3 of the 30” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### the cave of Adullam

“the cave near the town of Adullam.” Adullam is near Bethlehem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 11:16**

**in his stronghold, a cave**

Alternate translation: "in his safe place in a cave"

**the Philistines had established their camp at Bethlehem**

Alternate translation: "the Philistines had stationed soldiers in Bethlehem"



## 1 Chronicles 11:17

### the well at Bethlehem, the well that is by the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)  
(See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:18

### three mighty men

“3 mighty men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### broke through the army of the Philistines

Alternate translation: “fought their way through the army of the Philistines”

### the well of Bethlehem, the well at the gate

These two phrases refer to the same well. The second specifies which well in Bethlehem. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 11:17](#). (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### he poured it out to Yahweh

This means that he poured out the water as an offering to Yahweh. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:19

### May it be that I should never do this!

Alternate translation: "May I never do something like this!" or "This is something I should never do!"

### Should I drink the blood of these men who have risked their lives?

David speaks of the water as if it were blood because the men risked their lives to bring the water to him. He uses a question to emphasize this. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should not drink this water, which would be like drinking the blood of these men who have risked their lives to bring it to me." (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-rquestion\]\]](#)) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:20

### Abishai

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#).

### captain over the Three

This means Abishai was the leader of the three men who went and got water for David.

### three hundred

"300 men" or "300 warriors" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### He is mentioned along with the Three

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "People often mentioned him when they spoke of the Three" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:21

### Of the Three, he was given double honor and became

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) that he received double the honor that the Three received. Alternate translation: "People gave him twice as much honor as they gave the Three and he became" or (2) the Three honored him more than they honored others. Alternate translation: "The Three honored him more than they honored others and he became" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:22

### Benaiah & Jehoiada & Ariel

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Kabzeel

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:23

### five cubits

A “cubit” is a unit of measurement equal to 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “2.3 meters” (See: **Biblical Distance (p.992)**) (See: **Biblical Distance (p.992)**)

### a spear like a weaver’s beam

This compares the size of the spear with the size of a weaver’s beam. Alternate translation: “a spear the size of a weaver’s beam” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### he went down to him

“Benaiah went down to the Egyptian.” This idiom means that he met him in battle. Alternate translation: “he attacked him” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:24

### did these feats

Alternate translation: "did these mighty deeds"

### he was named alongside the three mighty men

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "people praised him like they praised the three mighty men" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 11:25

**He was more highly regarded than the thirty soldiers in general, but he was not regarded quite as highly as the three mighty men**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "The people respected him more than the 30 soldiers, but not as much as the 3 most elite soldiers" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **his bodyguard**

the group of people responsible for protecting David

## **1 Chronicles 11:26**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 11:27

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:28

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:29

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:30

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:31

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:32

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 11:33

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:34

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:35

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:36

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:37

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:38

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:39

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:40

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 11:41

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:42

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### thirty with him

"30 men with him" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:43

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:44

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:45

This concludes the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:46

This continues the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 11:47

This ends the list of David's thirty most important warriors. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12

### 1 Chronicles 12 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### **“[They] could use both the right hand and the left”**

These soldiers were very skilled. They were able to fight with either hand. (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

#### **King David**

This chapter records all those who supported David as king over Saul. The extent of this record shows that there was nearly universal support for David.



## 1 Chronicles 12:1

**while he was still banished from the presence of**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “during the time when he could not be in the presence of” (See:

**Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:2

**could use both the right hand and the left in slinging stones and in shooting arrows**

Alternate translation: "could use either their right hands or their left hands to sling stones and shoot arrows"

### **slinging stones**

The sling was a strip of leather that a person would use to throw a stone long distances.

## 1 Chronicles 12:3

### General Information:

### General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:4

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:5

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:6

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:7

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Benjamin who joined David at Ziklag. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:8

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### whose faces were as fierce as the faces of lions

Here the word “faces” represents the men and the lions. Their faces express the fierceness with which they fight battles. Alternate translation: “who were as fierce in battle as lions hunting prey” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### They were as swift as gazelles on the mountains

This hyperbole compares how swiftly these men were able to run with how swiftly gazelles are able to run over rugged mountain terrain. (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### gazelles

animals similar to deer that can run quickly over hills and rough ground



## 1 Chronicles 12:9

### Ezer the leader, Obadiah the second, Eliab the third

This begins a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:10

### Mishmannah the fourth, Jeremiah the fifth

This continues a list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:11

### Attai the sixth, Eliel the seventh

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:12

### Johanan the eighth, Elzabad the ninth

This continues the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:13

### Jeremiah the tenth, Makbannai the eleventh

This ends the list of the men from the tribe of Gad who joined David, in order of their importance. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:14

### The least led a hundred

This means that the smallest group of the army that a leader led was 100 men. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### the greatest led a thousand

This means that the largest group of the army that a leader led was 1,000 men. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:15

### first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### when it overflowed its banks

Alternate translation: "when the Jordan overflowed its banks"

### chased away all those living in the valleys

Alternate translation: "they chased away all those living in the valleys"

## **1 Chronicles 12:16**

### **men of Benjamin and Judah**

Alternate translation: "men from the tribes of Benjamin and Judah"



## 1 Chronicles 12:17

### may the God of our ancestors see

What God will see may be supplied in translation. Alternate translation: “may the God of our ancestors see what you intend to do” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:18

### the Spirit came on Amasai

The Spirit empowering Amasai is spoken of as if the Spirit came on him. Alternate translation: “the Spirit empowered Amasai” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### Amasai

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the thirty

“the 30 soldiers” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### We are yours, David. We are on your side, son of Jesse

These phrases share similar meanings. The idioms “we are yours” and “we are on your side” both mean that the men support David. Alternate translation: “We are devoted to you, David. We support you, son of Jesse” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### Peace, may peace be to whoever helps you

Here the word “peace” refers to prosperity and well-being. The word is repeated to emphasize great prosperity. Alternate translation: “May whoever helps you greatly prosper” (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:19

### deserted to

Alternate translation: "left their leaders to join"

### He will desert to his master Saul

Alternate translation: "He will stop fighting with us and fight for his master Saul"

## 1 Chronicles 12:20

### Ziklag

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Adnah, Jozabad, Jediahel, Michael, Jozabad, Elihu, and Zillethai

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### captains over thousands of Manasseh

This means that each of these men led groups of a thousand soldiers in the tribe of Manasseh. Alternate translation: "each a captain over 1,000 men in the tribe of Manasseh" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 12:21**

### **the roving bands**

“the groups of robbers.” This refers to groups of people who robbed people traveling through the countryside.

## 1 Chronicles 12:22

### Day after day

Alternate translation: "Each day"

### a great army, like the army of God

This could mean: (1) the phrase "like the army of God" means "like an army that God assembled" or (2) the word "God" is used as an idiom that refers to the great size of the army. Alternate translation: "a very large army" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:23

### General Information:

### General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### to turn the kingdom of Saul over to him

The men making David king in place of Saul is spoken of as if they gave possession of Saul's kingdom to David.  
Alternate translation: "to make David king in place of Saul" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### carried out Yahweh's word

Alternate translation: "made Yahweh's word true" or "fulfilled Yahweh's word"

## 1 Chronicles 12:24

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### 6,800, armed for war

“six thousand eight hundred, armed for war” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 12:25

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### From the Simeonites

Alternate translation: "From Simeon" or "From the tribe of Simeon"

### 7,100 fighting men

"seven thousand one hundred fighting men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:26

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### 4,600 fighting men

“four thousand six hundred fighting men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:27

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Jehoiada

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### with him were 3,700

“with him were three thousand seven hundred” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:28

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### twenty-two leaders

"22 leaders" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:29

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### From Benjamin, Saul's tribe

Alternate translation: "From Benjamin, the tribe to which Saul belonged"

### three thousand

"3,000" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:30

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### 20,800 fighting men

“twenty thousand eight hundred fighting men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### From the Ephraimites

Alternate translation: “From Ephraim” or “From the tribe of Ephraim”

## 1 Chronicles 12:31

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### eighteen thousand

“18,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:32

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### two hundred

“200” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### who had understanding of the times

This could mean: (1) these men knew the right time to act or (2) these men had a good understanding of current political events within Israel.



## 1 Chronicles 12:33

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **fifty thousand**

“50,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **ready to give undivided loyalty**

It is implicit that they would give loyalty to David. Alternate translation: “ready to give undivided loyalty to David” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:34

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

**one thousand & thirty-seven thousand**

“1,000 ... 37,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:35

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### From the Danites

Alternate translation: "From Dan" or "From the tribe of Dan"

### 28,600 men

"twenty-eight thousand six hundred men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:36

This continues the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### forty thousand

"40,000" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:37

This ends the list of the number of men who joined David from each tribe. (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### the Reubenites, Gadites

Alternate translation: "Reuben, Gad" or "the tribe of Reuben, the tribe of Gad"

### 120,000 men

"one hundred twenty thousand men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 12:38**

**with firm intentions to make David king**

Alternate translation: "determined to make David king"

## 1 Chronicles 12:39

### They were there with David

Alternate translation: "These soldiers were there with David"

### three days

"3 days" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 12:40

### Israel was celebrating

The word "Israel" represents the people who make up the nation. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel were celebrating" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)



## 1 Chronicles 13

### 1 Chronicles 13 General Notes

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Ark of the covenant

David tried to bring the ark to Jerusalem on an ox cart instead of being carried by priests as the law said to do. The ox stumbled and Uzzah touched the ark to keep it from falling and he immediately died because of this. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/priest\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/lawofmoses\]\]](#) and **covenant (p.1080)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:1

### the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:2

### all the assembly of Israel

This refers to all of the Israelites who were assembled in this place. Alternate translation: “all of the Israelites who were assembled there” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### if this comes from Yahweh our God

This idiom means that this action is something that Yahweh approves. Alternate translation: “if this is something that Yahweh our God approves” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### Let them be told to join us

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Let messengers tell them to join us” or “Let them join us” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 13:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 13:4

### they seemed right in the eyes of all the people

Here the word “eyes” represents seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “all the people considered these things to be right” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:5

### David assembled all Israel together

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled people together from all Israel” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### Lebo Hamath & Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:6

### Baalah & Kiriath Jearim

These are the names of places. “Baalah” is another name for Kiriath Jearim. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### which belongs to Judah

Alternate translation: “which is in Judah”

### to bring up from there the ark of God

It is implied that they are taking the ark to Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “to take to Jerusalem the ark of God” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### to bring up from there

Jerusalem is higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem and going down from it.

### which is called by Yahweh’s name

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) the idiom “called by ... name” refers to a person owning the thing. Alternate translation: “which belongs to Yahweh” or (2) the ark has Yahweh’s name written on it. Alternate translation: “which bears Yahweh’s name” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### who sits enthroned over the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh’s footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: “who sits on his throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:7

### Abinadab & Uzzah & Ahio

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 13:8

### David and all Israel

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “David and all of the Israelites who were present” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### singing with stringed instruments

Alternate translation: “singing while playing stringed instruments”

### tambourines

hand drums with pieces of metal around the side that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:9

### Kidon & Uzzah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:10

### the anger of Yahweh burned against Uzzah

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that burned the one with whom Yahweh is angry. Alternate translation: "Yahweh was very angry with Uzzah" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### before God

Alternate translation: "in the presence of God"

## 1 Chronicles 13:11

### That place is called

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “People call that place” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Perez Uzzah

This is the name of a place. Translator may add a footnote that says, “The name ‘Perez Uzzah’ means ‘the punishment of Uzzah.’” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### to this day

See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 4:43](#)

## 1 Chronicles 13:12

### How can I bring the ark of God home to me?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is afraid to take the ark to Jerusalem. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am too afraid to bring the ark of Yahweh with me to Jerusalem." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:13

### Obed Edom the Gittite

This is the name of a man. A “Gittite” is a person from the city of Gath. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 13:14

### in Obed Edom's household in his house

Alternate translation: "with Obed Edom's family in his house"

### three months

"3 months" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Yahweh blessed his house

Here the word "house" is a metonym for his family. Alternate translation: "Yahweh blessed his family" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## **1 Chronicles 14**

### **1 Chronicles 14 General Notes**

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

David asked for help from God and because of this, God enabled him to defeat the Philistines when they tried to capture him.



## 1 Chronicles 14:1

### Hiram

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### carpenters

people who make things with wood

### masons

people make things with stone or brick

### They built a house for him

Alternate translation: "The carpenters and masons built a house for David"

## 1 Chronicles 14:2

### established him as

Alternate translation: "made him"

### his kingdom was exalted on high

The idiom "exalted on high" means that Yahweh had given great honor to David's kingdom. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had exalted David's kingdom on high" or "Yahweh had given great honor to David's kingdom" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### for the sake of his people Israel

Here the word "his" refers to Yahweh.

## **1 Chronicles 14:3**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 14:4

### the children who were born to him

Alternate translation: “the children whom his wives bore for him”

### Shammua, Shobab, Nathan

These are names of men. See how you translated these in [1 Chronicles 3:5](#). (See: **How to Translate Names** (p. 1014)) (See: **How to Translate Names** (p.1014))

## 1 Chronicles 14:5

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Ibhar, Elishua, Elpelet**

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:6](#), although there “Elpelet” is spelled “Eliphelet.” (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:6

This continues the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Nogah, Nepheg, Japhia

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:7](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:7

This ends the list of the children who were born to David in Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Elishama, Beeliada, and Eliphelet

These are names of men. These names appear also in [1 Chronicles 3:8](#), although there “Beeliada” is spelled “Eliada.”  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:8

### Now

The writer uses this word to show that he has finished giving the background information that he started in [1 Chronicles 14:3](#) and is starting a new part of the story. Your language may have a different way of doing this.

### David had been anointed as king

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the elders of Israel had anointed David as king” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### went out against them

It is implied that David led his army out to fight against them. Alternate translation: “led his army out to fight against them” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)



## 1 Chronicles 14:9

### Valley of Rephaim

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:10

### give them to you

This idiom means that Yahweh will enable David to have victory over them. Alternate translation: “give you victory over them” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:11

### Baal Perazim

This is the name of a place. You may add a footnote that says, "The name 'Baal Perazim' means 'Lord of breaking through.'" (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### God has burst through my enemies & like a bursting flood of water

David speaks of God easily defeating David's enemies as if God had burst through them, like a flood bursts through anything in its path. Alternate translation: "God has easily defeated my enemies ... like a flood easily bursts through everything" (See: **Simile (p.1063)**) (See: **Simile (p.1063)**)

### by my hand

This refers to David's resources. Alternate translation: "using my army" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:12

### that they should be burned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “to burn their false gods” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 14:13**

### **the valley**

Alternate translation: "the Valley of Rephaim"

## 1 Chronicles 14:14

### **attack their front**

Alternate translation: "attack from the front"

### **circle around behind them and come on them through the balsam woods**

Alternate translation: "go through the forest of balsam trees and attack them from behind"

### **balsam woods**

"Balsam" here is a type of tree, and the "woods" describe many balsam trees growing together. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:15

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

God continues his answer to David's question.

### **When you hear the sound of marching in the wind blowing through the balsam treetops**

This speaks of the sound of the leaves rustling as wind blows through them as if it were the sound of marching.  
Alternate translation: "When the wind blowing through the tops of the balsam trees sounds like men marching"  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 14:16

### Gezer

This is the name of a town. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 14:17

### David's fame went out into all lands

People in every land hearing of David's reputation is spoken of as if David's fame traveled to those lands. Alternate translation: "People far away heard about David's fame" (See: **Personification (p.1049)**) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15

### 1 Chronicles 15 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 explain how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: **priest, priesthood (p.1084)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:1

### David built houses for himself & He prepared

It might be best to translate this so that the reader understands that David had other people do this for him.

Alternate translation: "David had workers build houses for him ... He had them prepare" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:2

### they had been chosen by Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had chosen them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:3

### David assembled all Israel at Jerusalem

Here the word “all” is a generalization. The phrase “all Israel” means that David assembled people from all over Israel, not that he assembled every person in Israel. Alternate translation: “David assembled at Jerusalem people from all over Israel” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:4

### General Information:

### General Information:

This begins the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:5

### 120 men

“one hundred twenty men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:6

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

### 220 men

“two hundred twenty men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 15:7

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:8

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:9

This continues the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:10

This ends the list of the number of men whom David assembled from each of the Levite clans. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-names\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:11

### Uriel, Asaiah, Joel, Shemaiah, Eliel, and Amminadab

These are names of men. See how you translated them in [1 Chronicles verses 5-6](#) and [1 Chronicles verses 7-10](#).  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 15:12**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 15:13

### You did not carry it

Alternate translation: "You did not carry the ark"

### broke out against us

The idiom to "break out against" means to act violently toward someone. Alternate translation: "acted violently toward us" or "attacked us" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### we did not seek him

Here seeking Yahweh means to seek his counsel. Alternate translation: "we did not ask him for instructions" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## **1 Chronicles 15:14**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 15:15

### the rules given by the word of Yahweh

The word “word” can be translated with a verb. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the rules that the word of Yahweh had given” or “the rules that Yahweh had spoken” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-abstractnouns\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:16

### cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### lifting up their voices

This idiom means to sing loudly. Alternate translation: “singing loudly” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:17

### General Information:

### General Information:

This begins the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:18

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### With them were their kinsmen of second rank

This likely means that these men served in lower positions and were assistants to Heman, Asaph, and Ethan. Alternate translation: “With them were their kinsmen who were in a lower position of power” or “The following relatives would help them” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Mikneiah, Obed Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers

The word “gatekeepers” refers to people who guard gates or entryways. Here it refers to guarding access to the ark of the covenant and applies to Obed Edom and Jeiel. Alternate translation: “Mikneiah, and the gatekeepers, Obed Edom and Jeiel” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:19

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### The musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan were appointed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “The Levites appointed the musicians Heman, Asaph, and Ethan” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:20

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Alamoth

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:21

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Sheminith

The meaning of this word is not clear but may refer to a style of music. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### led the way

Alternate translation: "led the other musicians" or "led the procession"

## 1 Chronicles 15:22

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 15:23

This continues the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:24

This ends the list of men whom the Levites appointed to sing and play music as the people brought the ark to Jerusalem. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:25

### the commanders over thousands

This could mean: (1) the word “thousands” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders and led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers” or (2) the word translated as “thousands” does not represent an exact numbers but is the name of a large military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Obed Edom

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 15:26**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 15:27

**David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, as were the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "David, the Levites who carried the ark, the singers, and Kenaniah, the leader of the song with the singers all wore fine linen robes" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### linen

a cloth made from fibers of the flax plant

### Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:28

### So all Israel brought up the ark

Here the word “all” is a generalization. Alternate translation: “So a great crowd of Israelites brought up the ark”  
(See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### cymbals

two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 15:29

**as the ark of the covenant of Yahweh came to the city of David**

Alternate translation: "as the people brought the ark of the covenant of Yahweh to the city of David"

**Michal**

This is the name of David's wife. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

**she despised him in her heart**

Here "heart" represents thoughts or emotions. Alternate translation: "she despised him" or "she hated him" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16

### 1 Chronicles 16 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

Chapters 15 and 16 tell how David organized the priests and Levites. (See: **priest, priesthood (p.1084)**)

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetic song in 16:8-36.

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### David's psalm

As David organized the priests in their work in the tent, he wrote a psalm of praise to Yahweh.



## 1 Chronicles 16:1

### General Information:

### General Information:

The word “they” in these verses refers to the priests and Levites.

### before God

Alternate translation: “to God”

## 1 Chronicles 16:2

### **When David had finished sacrificing the burnt offering and the fellowship offerings**

This is a metonym for David directing the priests, who performed the actual sacrifices. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)  
(See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **he blessed the people in the name of Yahweh**

To bless “in the name of Yahweh” means to bless with Yahweh’s power and authority or as his representative. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:3

### He distributed to every Israelite

This was done under David's authority and direction. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### cake of raisins

a baked sweet bread made with dried grapes

## **1 Chronicles 16:4**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 16:5

### **Zechariah & Jaaziel & Shemiramoth & Jehiel & Mattithiah & Eliab & Benaiah & Obed Edom & Jeiel**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **second to him**

This means next to him in authority and position. (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### **cymbals**

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:6

### Benaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 16:7**

### **on that day**

Here “that day” refers to the day the ark of the covenant was moved from the house of Obed Edom to Jerusalem.

### **song of thanksgiving**

Alternate translation: “song of giving thanks”

## 1 Chronicles 16:8

### call on his name

Here “his name” represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: “call on Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the nations

This refers to the people in the nations. Alternate translation: “the people of the nations” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)



## **1 Chronicles 16:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 16:10

### Boast in his holy name

Here "his holy name" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Boast in who Yahweh is" or "Boast in Yahweh" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### let the heart of those who seek Yahweh rejoice

- Here "the heart" represents the person who seeks Yahweh. Alternate translation: "let the people who seek Yahweh rejoice" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

(See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:11

### Seek Yahweh and his strength

To “seek Yahweh’s strength” means to ask him to strengthen you. Alternate translation: “Seek Yahweh and ask him to give you his strength” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### seek his presence continually

Alternate translation: “seek to be near him always”

## 1 Chronicles 16:12

### Recall the marvelous things

Alternate translation: "Remember the marvelous things"

### his miracles and

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: "remember his miracles and" (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

### decrees from his mouth

Here "mouth" refers to the things that Yahweh spoke. Alternate translation: "decrees that he has spoken" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:13

**you descendants of Israel his servant, you people of Jacob, his chosen ones**

These phrases share similar meanings and are used for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p. 1046)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:14

### His decrees are on all the earth

Here "all the earth" refers to all the people of the earth. Alternate translation: "His laws are for all the people of the earth" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:15

### Keep his covenant & for a thousand generations

These two phrases share similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. Here “word” refers to the covenant. Alternate translation: “Keep his covenant in mind forever, the promise that he made for a thousand generations” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### Keep his covenant in mind

This means to remember and think about his covenant. Alternate translation: “Remember his covenant” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### a thousand generations

“1,000 generations” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:16

### He calls to mind

The phrase “calls to mind” means to remember something. Alternate translation: “He remembers” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### the covenant that he made with Abraham, and his oath to Isaac

Both “the covenant” and “the oath” refer to the same promise that Yahweh made to his people. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### his oath to Isaac

This refers to the oath that he had previously made to Issac. Alternate translation: “his oath that he made to Isaac” (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)



## **1 Chronicles 16:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 16:18

### General Information:

### General Information:

The words “you” and “your” in this verse refers to Israel.

### **as your share**

Alternate translation: “as your part”

## 1 Chronicles 16:19

### General Information:

## General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

### strangers in the land

It is implied that “the land” refers to Canaan. Alternate translation: “foreigners in the land of Canaan” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:20

### General Information:

## General Information:

The word “they” in this verse refers to Israel.

### **from nation to nation, from one kingdom to another**

These two phrases have similar meanings and are used together for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:21

### General Information:

### General Information:

The words “them” and “their” in this verse refers to Israel.

### for their sakes

Alternate translation: “for their own well-being”

## 1 Chronicles 16:22

### Do not touch my anointed ones

Here “touch” means to harm. It is an exaggeration Yahweh used to strengthen his warning to not harm his people.  
Alternate translation: “Do not harm the people I have anointed” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:23

### General Information:

## General Information:

Parallelism is common in Hebrew poetry. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/writing-poetry\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#)) (See: **Poetry (p.1051)**)

### all the earth

This refers to the people of the earth. Alternate translation: “all you people who live on the earth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### announce his salvation

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **salvation**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “save.” Alternate translation: “announce that he has saved us” or “tell people that he is the one who saves” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

### day after day

Alternate translation: “every day”

## **1 Chronicles 16:24**

### **Declare his glory among the nations**

Alternate translation: "Tell all the people in every nation about his great glory"



## 1 Chronicles 16:25

### **Yahweh is great and is to be praised greatly**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh is great. Praise him greatly" or "Yahweh is great, and people should praise him greatly" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **he is to be feared above all other gods**

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "fear him above all other gods" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 16:26**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 16:27

### Splendor and majesty are in his presence

The author speaks as if splendor and majesty are people who can stand before a king. (See: **Personification (p. 1049)**) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)

#### in his presence

Alternate translation: "all around him" or "where he is"

### Strength and joy are in his place

The author speaks as if strength and joy are people who can be in Yahweh's sanctuary. (See: **Personification (p. 1049)**) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)

#### in his place

Alternate translation: "in his temple" or "in his sanctuary"

## 1 Chronicles 16:28

### Ascribe to Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Give praise to Yahweh" or "Praise Yahweh"

### ascribe to Yahweh glory and strength

The abstract nouns "glory" and "strength" can be stated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "praise Yahweh because he is glorious and strong" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:29

### Ascribe to Yahweh the glory his name deserves

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **glory**, you can express the same idea with a verb or adjective. Alternate translation: “Glorify Yahweh just as his name deserves” or “Proclaim that Yahweh is glorious just as his name deserves” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

### his name deserves

Here “his name” refers to the person of God. Alternate translation: “due to him” or “he deserves” or “he is worthy to receive” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Bow down to Yahweh

The implied information is that the people were to bow down in worship. Alternate translation: “Bow down to worship Yahweh” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-symaction\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### in the splendor of holiness

The abstract nouns “splendor” and “holiness” can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: “because he is gloriously beautiful and holy” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:30

### Tremble

shake because of fear

### all the earth

This is a metonym for all the people who live on the earth. Alternate translation: “all the people of the earth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:31

### Let the heavens be glad, and let the earth rejoice

This could mean: (1) the heavens and the earth are spoken of as if they have emotions like people. Alternate translation: "Let it be as if the heavens are glad and the earth rejoices" or (2) "the heavens" and "the earth" are metonyms for those who dwell in those places. Alternate translation: "Let those who live in the heavens be glad and let those who live on the earth rejoice" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#)) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:32

### that which fills it shout with joy

The implied information is that this refers to all the creatures living in the sea. They are spoken of as if they should shout with joy like people might do. Alternate translation: “the sea creatures shout joyfully” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-explicit\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-personification\]\]](#)) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### Let the fields be joyful, and all that is in them

“Let the fields and all that is in them be joyful.” The author speaks as if the fields and the animals that live in them have emotions like people. Alternate translation: “Let it be as if the fields themselves and all the animals that live in them are rejoicing” (See: **Personification (p.1049)**) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)



## 1 Chronicles 16:33

### let the trees in the forest shout for joy

This speaks about the trees as if they were people who could shout for joy. (See: **Personification (p.1049)**) (See: **Personification (p.1049)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:34

### for his covenant faithfulness endures forever

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as “faithfully” or “faithful.” Alternate translation: “for he faithfully loves us forever” or “for he is faithful to his covenant forever” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:35

### from the other nations

Here “the other nations” represents the people in those nations. Alternate translation: “from the people of other nations” or “from the armies of other nations” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### give thanks to your holy name

Here Yahweh is referred to by his “holy name.” Alternate translation: “give thanks to you” or “give thanks to Yahweh” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:36

### from everlasting to everlasting

This refers to two extremes and means for all time. Alternate translation: "for all eternity" (See: **Merism (p.1028)**) (See: **Merism (p.1028)**)

### All the people

This is a generalization that refers to the group of people assembled to worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: "The people" or "Everyone who was there" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:37

### his brothers

Alternate translation: "his relatives"

### as every day's work required

The implied information is that they were to perform the daily duties that were given in the law of Yahweh.

Alternate translation: "as was required every day by the law" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:38

### Obed Edom & Jeduthun & Hosah

These were names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### sixty-eight relatives

"68 relatives" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 16:39**

### **to serve before the tabernacle**

Alternate translation: "to serve at the tabernacle"

## 1 Chronicles 16:40

### General Information:

### General Information:

The word "They" in this verse refers to the priests.

### **continually morning**

Alternate translation: "every day, morning"



## 1 Chronicles 16:41

### General Information:

## General Information:

The word “them” in this verse refers to the priests.

### Heman & Jeduthun

These were names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 16:42

### cymbals

These are two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### guarded the gate

The implied information is that they were to guard the entrance to the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “guarded the tabernacle gate” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## **1 Chronicles 16:43**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 17

### 1 Chronicles 17 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Building the temple

David wanted to build a temple for God but God would not allow him to. Instead he promised that his son, Solomon, would build the temple and he promised David would have a descendant who would be king forever. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/temple\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/promise\]\]](#) and **eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever** (p.1082))

## 1 Chronicles 17:1

### It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here. (See: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1025)**) (See: **Introduction of a New Event (p.1025)**)

### settled

comfortable and happy, without the desire to move or change

### I am living in a house of cedar

Cedar is a kind of tree that is known for its strength. If you have an equivalent type of tree in your culture, you can use that name, otherwise you can reword this. Alternate translation: "I am living in a strong, permanent house" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying under a tent

Tents are temporary dwellings. If you do not have tents in your culture, you can word this differently. Alternate translation: "the ark of the covenant of Yahweh is staying in a temporary place" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:2

### do what is in your heart

Here “heart” represents the mind. Alternate translation: “do what you think you should” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### God is with you

Here “with you” means God is helping and blessing David. (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:3

**the word of God came to Nathan, saying,**

The idiom “the word of God came to” is used to introduce a special message from God. Alternate translation: “God gave a message to Nathan. He said,” or “God spoke this message to Nathan:” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:4

**Go and tell David my servant, 'This is what Yahweh says: You will not build me a house in which to live**

This has quotations within quotations. It may be necessary to translate them as indirect quotations. Alternate translation: "Go and tell David my servant that he will not be the one to build a house in which I will live" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#)) (See: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1054)**)

### **build me a house**

Here "house" means a temple. In [1 Chronicles 17:10](#) Yahweh will say that he will build a house for David. There "house" means a family. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:10.



## 1 Chronicles 17:5

### that I brought up Israel

The implied information is that this refers to God bringing up Israel out of the land of Egypt. Alternate translation: “that I brought the Israelites to the promised land from the land of Egypt” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### a tent, a tabernacle

Both the words “tent” and “tabernacle” describe the same thing and emphasize that he had lived in a place that was not a permanent building. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:6

**did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders whom I appointed to shepherd my people, saying, "Why have you not built me a house of cedar?"**

This has a quotation within a quotation. The direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "did I ever ask any of Israel's leaders, whom I appointed to shepherd my people, why they had not built me a house of cedar?" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-quotations\]\]](#)) (See: **Quotes within Quotes (p.1054)**)

**did I ever say anything to any of Israel's leaders**

Yahweh uses a question to emphasize that he never asked any of Israel's leaders to build him a house. Alternate translation: "I never said anything to any of Israel's leaders" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

**whom I appointed to shepherd my people**

Those who are leaders of the people of Israel are spoken of as if they were shepherds and the people were sheep. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

**Why have you not built me a house of cedar?**

If Yahweh had asked the leaders this question, he would have been using a question to scold them for not building him a house of cedar. But, Yahweh said previously that he did not ask them this question. Alternate translation: "You should have built me a house of cedar." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

Yahweh describes his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

### tell my servant David

Yahweh is still telling the prophet Nathan what he should tell David.

### I took you from the pasture

David’s job as a shepherd is referred to by the place he watched his sheep. Alternate translation: “I took you from your job as a shepherd” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### pasture

an area of land where animals feed on the grass. See how you translated this word in [1 Chronicles 4:39](#) and [4:40](#).

## 1 Chronicles 17:8

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### I have been with you

Here “with you” means that Yahweh has helped and blessed David. (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### cut off all your enemies

Yahweh destroying David’s enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh cut them off, as one would cut a piece of cloth or cut a branch from a tree. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### I will make you a name

Here “name” represents a person’s reputation. Alternate translation: “I will make your name to be great and well known” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the great ones

The phrase “great ones” means famous persons.

## 1 Chronicles 17:9

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### **I will appoint a place**

Alternate translation: "I will choose a place"

### **will plant them there**

God causing the people to live in the land permanently and securely is spoken of as if he would plant them in the land. Alternate translation: "I will settle them there" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### **be troubled no more**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "no one will ever trouble them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:10

### General Information:

### General Information:

The words “your” and “you” in this verse refers to David.

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### from the days

Here “days” represents a longer period of time. Alternate translation: “from the time” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### I commanded judges

After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble.

### to be over my people Israel

To be in authority is referred to as being over someone. Alternate translation: “to rule my people Israel” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### subdue

make a person or animal unable to attack

### build you a house

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) God told David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:11

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### It will come about

Alternate translation: "It will happen"

### when your days are fulfilled for you to go to your fathers

The two phrases "when your days are fulfilled" and "go to your fathers" have similar meanings and are combined for emphasis. They both are polite ways to refer to death and dying. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-euphemism\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### I will raise up your descendant after you

God appointing David's descendant is spoken of as if Yahweh would raise or lift him up. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### **I will establish his throne forever**

The right to rule as king is described by the place where a king sits. Alternate translation: "I will make his rule over Israel to last forever" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)



## 1 Chronicles 17:13

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

### **I will be a father to him, and he will be my son**

The prophecy in 17:11-14 refers to Solomon, David's son. But, aspects of the prophecy will be fulfilled by Jesus. So, here it is best to translate the words "father" and "son" with your normal words for a biological father and son.

### **I will not take my covenant faithfulness away from him, as I took it from Saul**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **faithfulness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as "faithfully." Alternate translation: "I will never stop faithfully loving him, as I stopped loving Saul" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

Yahweh finishes describing his promises to King David through the prophet Nathan.

**I will set him over my house and in my kingdom forever, and his throne will be established forever**

These two phrases have similar meanings and emphasize that David's dynasty will last forever. (See: **Parallelism (p. 1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

**his throne will be established forever**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "I will establish his throne forever" (See: **Active or Passive (p. 983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

**his throne**

A king's right to rule is referred to by the place a king sits. Alternate translation: "his right to rule" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:15

### reported to him

Alternate translation: "told him"

### all these words

Here "words" represents what Yahweh said. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:16

### he said

Alternate translation: "David said"

### Who am I, Yahweh God, and what is my family, that you have brought me to this point?

- David asks this question to express the deep emotion he felt from hearing Yahweh's proclamation. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "My family and I are not worthy of this honor, Yahweh God." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

(See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### this was a small thing

Something that is not important is described as being small. (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “in your judgment” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### your servant’s family

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “my family” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

### for a great while to come

This speaks about time as if it were something that travels and arrives somewhere. Alternate translation: “and what will happen to them in the future” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### your servant

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:18

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### What more can I, David, say to you?

David uses this question to emphasize that he has nothing left to say to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "There is nothing more I can say to you." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

### You have honored your servant. You have given your servant special recognition

These two phrases have similar meanings and are repeated for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### You have given your servant special recognition

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **recognition**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form such as "recognize." Alternate translation: "You have recognized your servant in a special way" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### **your servant's sake**

Here David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be stated in first person. Alternate translation: “my sake” or “my benefit” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

### **to fulfill your own purpose**

Alternate translation: “to accomplish what you planned to do”

## 1 Chronicles 17:20

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

**there is none like you, and there is no God besides you**

These phrases have similar meaning and are repeated for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

**as we have always heard**

Here “we” refers to David and the nation of Israel. (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1006)**) (See: **Exclusive and Inclusive ‘We’ (p.1006)**)



## 1 Chronicles 17:21

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### **what nation on earth & by great and awesome deeds?**

This question expects a negative answer to make the point that there was no other nation like Israel. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: “there is no nation on earth ... by great and awesome deeds.” (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

### **you rescued from Egypt**

The implied information is that they were rescued from slavery. Alternate translation: “you rescued from slavery in Egypt” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### **to make a name for yourself**

Here “name” represents Yahweh’s reputation. Alternate translation: “to make all people know who you are” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **You drove out nations**

Here “nations” represents the people groups that were living in Canaan. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## **1 Chronicles 17:22**

**Connecting Statement:**

**Connecting Statement:**

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

# 1 Chronicles 17:23

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### So now

Here “now” does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

## may the promise that you made concerning your servant and his family be established forever

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “may you do what you promised to me and my family, and may your promise never change” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## your servant and his family

David is speaking about himself in the third person. This can be stated in the first person. Alternate translation: “me and my family” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:24

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### May your name

Here "name" represents Yahweh's reputation. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the house of me, David, your servant

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "my family" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### is established before you

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "is secure because of you" or "continues because of you" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 17:25

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### **your servant**

David refers to himself as “your servant.” This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: “me” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

### **that you will build him a house**

Here the metonym “house” refers to David’s ancestors continuing on as the rulers of Israel. In [1 Chronicles 17:4](#) Yahweh tells David he would not be the one to build a house for Yahweh. There “house” represented a temple. If your language has a word that can express both ideas, use it here and in 17:4. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **I, your servant, have found courage**

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **courage**, you can express the same idea with the verb “encouraged.” Alternate translation: “I, your servant, am encouraged”

## 1 Chronicles 17:26

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### Now

This does not mean “at this moment,” but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

## 1 Chronicles 17:27

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues to speak to Yahweh.

### **your servant's house**

David speaks of himself in the third person. This can be expressed in the first person. Alternate translation: “my house” or “my family” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

### **You, Yahweh, have blessed it, and it will be blessed forever**

These two phrases have about the same meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### **it will be blessed forever**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “you will continue to bless it forever” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 18

### 1 Chronicles 18 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David's victories

David conquered all kingdoms neighboring Israel. The gold, silver and bronze he received from these victories, he saved for building the temple. This may indicate that he believed that the victories were because of Yahweh and therefore the goods received in victory belonged to him. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)



## 1 Chronicles 18:1

### After this

Alternate translation: "After God's promise to bless David"

### it came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

## **1 Chronicles 18:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 18:3

### David then defeated Hadadezer

Here David and Hadadezer are spoken of as if they were alone, but the reader should understand that these kings represent their armies that were with them. Alternate translation: "David and his army then defeated the army of Hadadezer" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Hadadezer

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Zobah

This is the name of a country.

### was traveling to establish his rule by the Euphrates River

Alternate translation: "was going to the Euphrates river to conquer people in that area"

## **1 Chronicles 18:4**

### **a thousand chariots**

“1,000 chariots” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **seven thousand horsemen**

These are soldiers who rode on horses. “7,000 horsemen” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **twenty thousand footmen**

These are soldiers who walked. “20,000 footmen” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **hamstrung all the chariot horses**

David had his soldiers cut the hamstring muscles on the backs of the horses’ thighs so they would no longer be able to run.

### **reserved**

to keep for a special use

### **a hundred chariots**

“100 chariots” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 18:5

**killed twenty-two thousand**

“killed 22,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 18:6

### **garrisons**

groups of soldiers assigned to particular areas

### **Yahweh gave victory to David**

Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused David to be victorious"

## 1 Chronicles 18:7

### Hadadezer

This was the king of Zobah. See how you translated his name in [1 Chronicles 18:3](#).

### that were on Hadadezer's servants

Alternate translation: "that Hadadezar's servants carried"

## 1 Chronicles 18:8

### Tebah & Kun

These are the names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### very much bronze

Alternate translation: "a large quantity of bronze"

### It was with this bronze that Solomon later made the bronze basin called "The Sea," the pillars, and the bronze equipment

The writer adds this background information to explain what would happen to this bronze at a later time. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

### the bronze basin called "The Sea,"

This a large bronze bowl, about 5 meters across, that was kept in the temple for ceremonial washing.



## 1 Chronicles 18:9

### Tou

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hamath & Zobah

These are the names of places. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 18:10

### Tou & Hadoram

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### fought against

Alternate translation: "been at war with"

## **1 Chronicles 18:11**

### **set these objects apart to Yahweh**

Alternate translation: "decided that these objects would only be used to worship Yahweh"

### **he carried away from all the nations**

Alternate translation: "David took from all the nations that he defeated"

## **1 Chronicles 18:12**

### **Abishai & Zeruiah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **eighteen thousand Edomites**

“18,000 Edomites” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **Valley of Salt**

This is the name of a valley between Edom and Judah that was used as a battlefield.

## **1 Chronicles 18:13**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 18:14

### over all Israel

Alternate translation: "over all the Israelites"

### he administered justice and righteousness to all his people

The abstract nouns "justice" and "righteousness" can be translated as adjectives. Alternate translation: "he did what was just and right for all his people" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

## 1 Chronicles 18:15

### Zeruiah & Ahilud

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### recorder

the person who writes down details of special events

## 1 Chronicles 18:16

### Ahitub & Abiathar & Shavsha

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ahimelech

This spelling represents a correction of the spelling “Abimelech,” which some versions follow. The corrected spelling makes this verse agree with [2 Samuel 8:17](#).



## 1 Chronicles 18:17

### Benaiah & Jehoiada

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Kerethites & Pelethites

These are the names of foreign people groups who became David's bodyguards. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 19**

### **1 Chronicles 19 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This is the beginning of the story about the war against the Ammonites. This story continues in the first part of the next chapter.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **Insults**

The young king of Ammon insulted David when he had David's servants shaved and cut off their garments. Knowing David was going to attack him for this, he hired mercenaries from Aram to help him. Israel was able to defeat the Aramean mercenaries.

## 1 Chronicles 19:1

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Nahash

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 19:2

### Nahash & Hanun

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### I will show kindness & showed kindness

If your language does not use an abstract noun for the idea behind the word **kindness**, you can express the same idea with a verbal form. Alternate translation: "I will be kind ... was kind" (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)

### console

comfort

## 1 Chronicles 19:3

**Do you think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you?**

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not think that David is honoring your father because he has sent men to comfort you." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

**Do not his servants come to you to explore and examine the land in order to overthrow it?**

The princes asked this question to turn the king against David. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely his servants come to you to explore the land in order to overthrow it." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

## 1 Chronicles 19:4

### So Hanun seized

Hanun did not do this personally, but ordered his men to do it. Alternate translation: “So Hanun’s men seized” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### their garments

Alternate translation: “their clothes”

## 1 Chronicles 19:5

### he sent to meet with them

Alternate translation: "David sent some messengers to encourage them"

### deeply ashamed

In this idiom, shame is described as deep to show that it has greatly affected them. Alternate translation: "very ashamed" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### The king

This refers to David.

### then return

Alternate translation: "then return to Jerusalem"

## 1 Chronicles 19:6

### saw that they had become a stench to David

The word “stench” refers to a bad smell. This describes the Ammonites as something unpleasant and unwanted.  
Alternate translation: “realized that they had become repulsive to David” or “realized that they had angered David”  
(See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### a thousand talents

“1,000 talents” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### talents

approximately 33 kilograms (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### Naharaim & Maacah & Zobah

These are names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 19:7

### thirty-two thousand chariots

"32,000 talents" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Maacah & Medeba

These are names of cities. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### thirty-two thousand chariots

It is not clear if the Ammonites paid the entire thousand talents to the king of Maacah, or if they paid him only a portion of that amount and gave the rest to the other cities that sent additional chariots and horsemen.

## 1 Chronicles 19:8

### heard of it

Alternate translation: "heard that the Ammonites were coming out for war"

### to meet them

Alternate translation: "to fight against them"

## **1 Chronicles 19:9**

### **at the city gate**

this refers to the gate of the Ammonite capital city

### **the kings who had come**

this refers to the Aramean kings that the Ammonites hired to help them fight Israel

### **by themselves in the field**

in the field outside the city, separate from the Ammonites

## **1 Chronicles 19:10**

### **the battle lines**

Alternate translation: "the enemy soldiers lined up for battle"

## 1 Chronicles 19:11

### put them into battle lines

Alternate translation: “arranged his soldiers in lines for battle”

### Abishai

This is the name of Joab’s brother. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 19:12**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 19:13

### **Be strong & show ourselves to be strong**

Alternate translation: "Be brave ... behave bravely"

### **for our people and for the cities of our God**

Alternate translation: "for the sake of our people and for the cities of our God" or "to protect our people and the cities of our God"

### **what is good in his eyes**

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what he considers to be good" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## **1 Chronicles 19:14**

### **advanced to the battle**

Alternate translation: “moved forward to the battle” or “approached the enemy soldiers in the battle”



## **1 Chronicles 19:15**

### **Then Joab returned & and went back to Jerusalem**

It does not appear that Joab and his soldiers continued to attack the Ammonites in their city. When the Ammonites went into their city, the battle ended and the Israelites returned home.

## 1 Chronicles 19:16

### General Information:

## General Information:

Verses 16-19 describes a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

### the Arameans saw

What the Arameans understood is spoken of as what they saw. Alternate translation: “the Arameans understood” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### sent for reinforcements

Alternate translation: “requested more soliders”

### Shophak & Hadadezer

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 19:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

### When David was told this

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "When David's messengers told him that a larger Aramean army was coming" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### he gathered & He arranged

David did not do these things alone. His official and officers helped him. Alternate translation: "David and his officials gathered ... David and his officers arranged" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### all Israel

This is a generalization. Not every person in Israel came to fight. Alternate translation: "a very large number of Israelites" (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### He arranged

Alternate translation: "He organized"

### they fought him

Here "him" refers to David's soldiers, in addition to David. Alternate translation: "the Arameans fought David and his soldiers" (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 19:18

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

This verse continues to describe a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

### killed seven thousand & forty thousand

“killed 7,000 ... 40,000” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 19:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This verse finishes describing a second battle when the Arameans who fled from Joab in [1 Chronicles 19:15](#) were reinforced by other Arameans and attacked Israel again.

### **they were defeated by Israel**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Israel had defeated them" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **they made peace with David and served them**

They made the peace agreement with David as the king, and served the Israelites.

## **1 Chronicles 20**

### **1 Chronicles 20 General Notes**

#### **Structure and formatting**

This chapter ends the story of the war with Ammon and tells of giants being killed by David's soldiers.

#### **Special concepts in this chapter**

##### **“When kings normally go to war”**

It was advantageous for kings to go to war in the springtime. This was possibly due to the weather being neither too hot nor too cold.

#### **Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter**

##### **“It came about”**

This is a phrase used to indicate the next event in a series. It can often be translated as “after,” “then” or “next.”

## 1 Chronicles 20:1

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### at the time when kings normally go to war

This is background information from the author. It was harder to fight wars in the cold winter, so kings normally waited for spring to attack their enemies. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

### kings normally go to war & Joab led the army into battle

Here “kings” is a metonym that means the kings sent their armies into battle. Joab was the commander of David’s army. Alternate translation: “kings normally send their armies to war ... Joab led David’s army into battle” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### devastated the land

“destroyed the land.” This refers to when an army will ruin the land where their enemies grow food.

### He went and besieged Rabbah

“He” refers to the soldiers as well as Joab. Alternate translation: “Joab and his soldiers surrounded Rabbah” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 20:2

### talent

about 33 kilograms (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### The crown was set on David's head

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. This could mean: (1) David put the crown on his own head or (2) David's men placed the crown on his head. (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### he brought out

The word "he" refers to David, but also refers to David's soldiers who helped David do this. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### plunder

valuable items taken in war



## 1 Chronicles 20:3

### He brought out

The word “He” refers to David, but also refers to David’s soldiers who helped David do this. (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### forced them to work with saws and iron picks and axes

These terms describe difficult manual labor that the defeated people were forced to do.

### David required all the cities of the people

The people are referred to by their city. Alternate translation: “David required all the peoples of the cities” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 20:4

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### there was a battle at Gezer with the Philistines

Alternate translation: “the Israelites battled the Philistines at Gezer”

### Gezer

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Sibbekai & Sippai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hushathite & Rephaim

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the Philistines were subdued

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “they subdued the Philistines” or “they defeated the Philistines” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 20:5

### Gob

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Elhanan & Jair & Lahmi

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Bethlehemite & Gittite

These are names of people groups. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### staff

a long and thin pole.

### the staff of whose spear was like a weaver's beam

A weaver's beam was a very large piece of wood used to stretch strings as the threads of a rug are weaved together around them. This means the handle of Lahmi's spear was very large.

## 1 Chronicles 20:6

### It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

### Rephaim

This is the name given to a race of people who were very tall and strong. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## **1 Chronicles 20:7**

### **Jehonadab & Shimea**

These are names of men.

## 1 Chronicles 20:8

### These were descendants of the Rephaim of Gath

Here “these” refer to Sippai in [1 Chronicles 20:4](#), Lahmi in [1 Chronicles 20:5](#), and the giant in verse 6.

### they were killed by the hand of David and by the hand of his soldiers

David and his soldiers are referred to by the part of their bodies used to hold a sword. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “David and his soldiers killed the descendants of the Rephaim” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21

### 1 Chronicles 21 General Notes

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Trust

To trust in one's own power instead of God's protection is a sin. David had been trusting God to protect him, but now he counted the men of military age so he could know the strength of his army. (See: [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/trust\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///tw/dict/bible/kt/sin\]\]](#))

## 1 Chronicles 21:1

### An adversary arose against Israel

Possible meanings of **adversary** are: (1) this refers to Satan who decided to cause trouble for Israel or (2) this refers to an enemy army that began to threaten Israel.

### incited David to count Israel

“caused David to do wrong, to count Israel.” If your language has a word for getting someone to become angry and do something he knows is wrong, you should use it here.



## 1 Chronicles 21:2

### count the people of Israel & that I may know their number

It is apparent from [1 Chronicles 21:5](#) that David wanted to count only the men who were able to fight.

### from Beersheba to Dan

The Israelites considered these two cities their most southern and most northern cities. David uses these cities to refer to all of Israel. (See: **Merism (p.1028)**) (See: **Merism (p.1028)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:3

### a hundred times greater than it is

Joab expresses the desire for an army the size of 100 armies to say he would like the army to have more soldiers and be more powerful. (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**)

### But my master the king, do they not all serve my master? Why does my master want this? Why bring guilt on Israel?

Joab uses these three rhetorical questions to tell David that the census was a bad idea. It appears that David was trusting the size of his army instead of trusting Yahweh, and thus making Israel guilty of sin. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: But my master the king, they all serve you already. My master should not request this. You will only bring guilt on the people of Israel by trusting your military power." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

### Why does my master want this?

The word "this" refers to David's plan to count all the men of Israel.

## 1 Chronicles 21:4

### the king's word was enforced against Joab

Alternate translation: "the command of the king prevailed despite Joab's objections"

### So Joab left and went throughout all Israel

It is understood from David's command in [1 Chronicles 21:2](#) that Joab went to count the people of Israel. It can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "So Joab left and went throughout all Israel to count the people" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:5

### 1,100,000 men

“one million, one hundred thousand men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### men who drew the sword

The soldiers in Israel are described by the action of pulling out a sword to fight with it. Alternate translation: “men who were prepared to serve as soldiers” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### 470,000 soldiers

“four hundred seventy thousand soldiers” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:6

### **But Levi and Benjamin were not counted among them**

The Levites were supposed to lead worship and not to fight. It is unclear why Joab did not count Benjamin. This can be stated in active voice. Alternate translation: "But Joab did not count the men from the tribes of Levi and Benjamin" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **the king's command had disgusted Joab**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Joab was offended by what David had commanded" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## **1 Chronicles 21:7**

### **by this action**

Here “this action” refers to David’s plan to count all the men of Israel who are able to fight.

### **so he attacked Israel**

The nature of this attack is not clear. It was apparently enough to cause David to realize that Yahweh was angry with him for counting the people.

## 1 Chronicles 21:8

### take away your servant's guilt

This is an idiom. Forgiveness is here spoken of as having guilt taken away. Alternate translation: “forgive me” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### your servant's guilt

David refers to himself as God's servant. Alternate translation: “my guilt” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

## **1 Chronicles 21:9**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **1 Chronicles 21:10**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 21:11**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 21:12

### being caught by their swords

Here “their swords” represents death in battle. Alternate translation: “being killed by them in battle” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Yahweh’s sword, that is, a plague in the land

Here the plague is spoken of as Yahweh’s sword because the “sword” is a metonym for death. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### destroying throughout all the land

Alternate translation: “killing people who live in every part of the land”

### I should take to the one who sent me

The one who sent him was Yahweh. This can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “I should take to Yahweh who sent me” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:13

### Let me fall into the hand of Yahweh rather than into the hand of man

Here “hand” represents power to harm or punish Israel. Alternate translation: “Let me be punished by Yahweh, rather than be punished by people” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Let me fall

The people of Israel are the ones who would die from the plague, but David is personalizing this judgment as if he himself was being killed.

### hand of man

Here “man” is used in the generic sense of “people.”

### his merciful actions are very great

Alternate translation: “Yahweh is very merciful”

## 1 Chronicles 21:14

### on Israel

Here Israel is a metonym that represents the people of Israel. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### seventy thousand people died

“70,000 people died” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:15

### changed his mind about the harm

Here “mind” represents his decision. Alternate translation: “decided not to destroy Jerusalem” (See: **Metonymy (p. 1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### Enough!

This exclamation means “You have killed enough people!” (See: **Exclamations (p.1004)**) (See: **Exclamations (p. 1004)**)

### draw back your hand

This is an idiom that means to stop doing something. Alternate translation: “do not kill attack the people of Jerusalem” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### Ornan

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:16

### **standing between earth and heaven**

This is symbolic language to indicate that the angel was sent from Yahweh in heaven to judge the people on the earth. (See: **Symbolic Language (p.1068)**) (See: **Symbolic Language (p.1068)**)

### **having a drawn sword in his hand raised over Jerusalem**

The angel holding a sword in his hand is a symbolic action that shows he is ready to attack Jerusalem. This is symbolic, because the judgment was sickness. Alternate translation: "holding a sword in his hand as if ready to attack Jerusalem" (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

### **clothed in sackcloth, lay facedown on the ground**

These were symbols of repentance. (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:17

### Is it not I that commanded that the army be numbered?

David uses this question to emphasize that he is the one who sinned by counting the people. Alternate translation: "I am the one who commanded that the army be numbered." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

### But these sheep

David speaks of the people of Israel as if they were sheep, who are known for trusting and following their leader. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### what have they done?

David uses this question to ask God not to punish the people. If it would be helpful in your language, you could express this question as a statement. Alternate translation: "they certainly have done nothing that deserves punishment." (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

### Let your hand strike me and my family

Here "hand" represents Yahweh's power to punish. Alternate translation: "Punish me and my family" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)



## 1 Chronicles 21:18

### David should go up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

### Ornan

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 21:15](#).

## 1 Chronicles 21:19

### David went up

This is a reference to elevation. This threshing floor which became the future site of the temple was the highest point in Jerusalem.

### as Gad instructed him to do in the name of Yahweh

Speaking “in the name of Yahweh” means speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative. Alternate translation: “as Gad, speaking for Yahweh, instructed David to do” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:20

### hid themselves

They were afraid of the angel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “hid themselves because they were afraid of the angel” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:21

### with his face to the ground

This phrase describes that Ornan bowed far forward. To bow before someone is a way to show humility and respect. A deeper bow shows greater humility and respect. Alternate translation: “bowed very low to the ground” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:22

### full price

Alternate translation: "I will pay the full price for what this threshing floor is worth"

# 1 Chronicles 21:23

## Take it as your own

This implies that David should take the land without paying for it. Alternate translation: "Take it as a gift" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## what is good in your sight

David's understanding is described as his sight. Alternate translation: "whatever you decide to do with it" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## threshing sledges

These are wooden sleds with rocks or metal fitted underneath, dragged by oxen over the grain on the threshing floor to separate the grain from its stalks. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:24

### full price

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 21:22](#).

## 1 Chronicles 21:25

### six hundred shekels of gold

“600 shekels of gold” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### shekels

a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### for the place

Alternate translation: “to buy the threshing floor”



## **1 Chronicles 21:26**

### **He called on Yahweh**

Alternate translation: "He prayed for help to Yahweh"

### **who answered him with fire from heaven on the altar for burnt offerings**

Alternate translation: "who answered him by sending fire from heaven to the altar where David would offer the burnt offerings"

## 1 Chronicles 21:27

### the angel put his sword back into its sheath

The angel putting his sword back in the sheath is a symbolic action to show that he would not continue to kill the people. Alternate translation: the angel put his sword in its sheath to show that he would stop killing the people” (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

### sheath

cover for a sword or knife

## 1 Chronicles 21:28

### Ornan

Translate his name as in [1 Chronicles 21:15](#).

## 1 Chronicles 21:29

### Now at that time

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

## 1 Chronicles 21:30

Verses 29-30 are background information to explain why David offered this sacrifice at the threshing floor instead of on the altar at the tabernacle. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

### to ask for God's direction

Alternate translation: "to ask God to tell him what he should do"

### afraid of the sword of the angel of Yahweh

Here "sword" represents being killed by the angel of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "afraid he would be killed by the angel of Yahweh" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

# 1 Chronicles 22

## 1 Chronicles 22 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section lasting for the remainder of the book. David begins preparing the things needed for building the temple. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Solomon

In addition to preparing for the construction of the temple by gathering supplies, David also prepares his son, Solomon, to build the temple. David instructs Solomon to obey God. This is what is most necessary.

## **1 Chronicles 22:1**

### **This is where**

Alternate translation: "This threshing floor is where"

## 1 Chronicles 22:2

### stonecutters

persons who gathered large stones and cut them to the correct size so builders could use the rocks in walls and buildings



## 1 Chronicles 22:3

### braces

items that connect two things together. “clamps” or “hinges”

### more bronze than could be weighed

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large quantity of bronze. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language.

Alternate translation: “so much bronze that no one could weigh it” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:4

### more cedar trees than could be counted

This is an exaggeration to show that there was a very large number of cedar trees. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so many cedar trees that no one could count them" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-hyperbole\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### The Sidonians and the Tyrians brought too many cedar logs to David to count

This is background information to explain who provided so many logs. (See: **Background Information (p.989)**) (See: **Background Information (p.989)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:5

### the house that is to be built for Yahweh

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the house that he will build for Yahweh” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### so that it will be famous and glorious in all other lands

Here the word “lands” refers to the people who lived there. Alternate translation: “so that people in every other land will know about it and think that it is glorious” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### prepare for its building

Alternate translation: “prepare to build it”

## 1 Chronicles 22:6

### he called

Alternate translation: "David called"

### commanded him to build

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "commanded him to oversee the building of" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:7

### it was my intention to build a house myself

The readers should understand that David intended for laborers to do the actual work. Alternate translation: "it was my intention to oversee the building of the house myself" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### it was my intention

Alternate translation: "I intended"

### to build a house myself

The reflexive "myself" means that David originally planned to build the temple. Alternate translation: "that I would be the one to build the temple" (See: **Reflexive Pronouns (p.1057)**) (See: **Reflexive Pronouns (p.1057)**)

### for the name of Yahweh my God

Here "name" represents God's honor. Alternate translation: "in order to honor Yahweh my God" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:8

### shed much blood

Here the killing of people is spoken of as shedding their blood, where “blood” represents their lives. Alternate translation: “killed many people” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### for my name

Here “name” represents God’s honor. Alternate translation: “to honor me” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### you have shed & in my sight

Here “sight” refers to what God has seen. Alternate translation: “I have seen that you have shed much blood on the earth” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:9

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

### **be a peaceful man**

Alternate translation: "live at peace with everyone"

### **give him rest from all his enemies**

Alternate translation: "cause there to be peace between him and all his enemies"

### **on every side**

This means in every place surrounding Israel.

### **For his name will be Solomon**

The name "Solomon" sounds like the Hebrew word for "peace." This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "His name will be Solomon, which sounds like the word for peace" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### **in his days**

Alternate translation: "while he rules"

## 1 Chronicles 22:10

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes telling Solomon what Yahweh said to him.

### a house for my name

Here “name” refers to honor. Alternate translation: “a temple to honor me” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### He will be my son, and I will be his father

God will treat Solomon as if he were God’s own son. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### I will establish the throne of his kingdom over Israel forever

Here “throne” refers to the authority to rule as king. Alternate translation: “I will make his descendants rule over Israel forever” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)



## 1 Chronicles 22:11

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

### Now

David uses this word to introduce something important he is about to say.

### May you build

Solomon would not personally do the building, but he would direct others to do it. Alternate translation: "May you direct people to build" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

**when he places you in charge over Israel**

Alternate translation: "when he makes you king of Israel"

## 1 Chronicles 22:13

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

### **Be strong and courageous & Do not fear or be discouraged**

These two sentences mean the same thing, stated in different ways in order to emphasize that Solomon should not be afraid. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

### Now, see, at great

The words "Now, see" introduce something important David is about to say. Alternate translation: "Listen! At great"

### at great effort I have prepared

Alternate translation: "I have worked hard to prepare"

### 100,000 talents

"one hundred thousand talents" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### talents

about 33 kilograms (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### one million

"1,000,000" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### You must add more to all this

Alternate translation: "You will need to increase that amount"

## 1 Chronicles 22:15

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

### **stonecutters, masons**

These are both workers who cut stone and prepare it for builders to use in walls and buildings.

### **carpenters**

persons who work with wood

### **skillful craftsmen without number of every kind**

Here “without number” is an exaggeration to emphasize that there were a large number of them. Alternate translation: “a very large number of every kind of skillful craftsmen” (See: **Hyperbole (p.1019)**) (See: **Hyperbole (p. 1019)**)

## 1 Chronicles 22:16

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

### **may Yahweh be with you**

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Solomon be successful in the project. (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## **1 Chronicles 22:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 22:18

### Yahweh your God is with you

This is an idiom that implies that Yahweh will help Israel to prosper. (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### your & you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: **Forms of You (p.1010)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1010)**)

### has given you peace on every side

Alternate translation: "has caused all the nations who live around Israel to live peacefully with you"

### He has given the region's inhabitants into my hand

Here "hand" refers to power to defeat his enemies. Alternate translation: "He has given me power over everyone who lives around us" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### The region is subdued before Yahweh and his people

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. "The other nations no longer attack Yahweh and his people" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 22:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to all the leaders of Israel.

### Now

This word introduces something important that David is about to say.

### seek Yahweh your God

Seeking **Yahweh** could mean: (1) asking God for help or (2) thinking about God and obeying him. (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### your & you

Here these pronouns are plural. (See: **Forms of You (p.1010)**) (See: **Forms of You (p.1010)**)

### with all your heart and your soul

Here “heart” and “soul” refer to the whole person. Alternate translation: “with your whole being” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### Get up and build the holy place

It is understood that Solomon will not do the work personally, but he will direct others to do it. Alternate translation: “Get up and direct the workers as they build the holy place” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the house built for Yahweh’s name

Here “name” refers to honor. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the temple you will build to honor Yahweh” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metonymy\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#)) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23

### 1 Chronicles 23 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the construction of the temple continues in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Organizing the Levites

As priests, the Levites had a significant role in the construction of the temple. David organized the Levites according to their families and explained what each group was to do. (See: **priest, priesthood (p.1084)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:1

### General Information:

### General Information:

David appoints Solomon as his successor and organizes Levitical priests and staff for temple service.

## **1 Chronicles 23:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 23:3

### The Levites who were thirty years old and older were counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Some of David's men counted the Levites who were 30 years old and older" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### They numbered thirty-eight thousand

"There were 38,000 of them" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 23:4**

### **Of these, twenty-four thousand**

"Of these Levities, 24,000" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **six thousand**

"6,000 Levites" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **officers and judges**

These Levites listened to legal arguments and administered justice according to the law of Moses.

### **four thousand**

"4,000 Levites" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:5

### gatekeepers

These Levites guarded the temple entrance so no person who was ceremonially unclean entered.

## **1 Chronicles 23:6**

### **that corresponded to**

Alternate translation: “based on” or “according to the descendants of”

### **Gershon, Kohath, and Merari**

These are names of Levi's sons. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 23:7

### General Information:

### General Information:

This is the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:8

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:9

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:10

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

# 1 Chronicles 23:11

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## the oldest & the second

The word "son" is understood. Also, "second" is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: "the oldest son ... the second son" (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## so they were considered as one clan

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "so David considered them to be one clan" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:12

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **There were four of Kohath's sons**

Alternate translation: "Kohath had 4 sons"

## 1 Chronicles 23:13

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Aaron was chosen to set apart the most holy things**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Yahweh chose Aaron to dedicate the most holy things” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **to give blessings in his name forever**

Here “in his name” refers to the authority to speak as his representative. Alternate translation: “to bless the people as representatives of God forever” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:14

### his sons were considered to be Levites

The sons of Aaron were the most important Levite clan, but the sons of Moses were also considered to be Levites. If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “the people considered Moses’ sons to be part of the Levite clan” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 23:15

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:16

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:17

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:18

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:19

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the oldest & the second & the third & the fourth

The word “son” is understood. Also, these numbers are in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son ... the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:20

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the oldest & the second

The word “son” is understood. Also, “second” is in ordinal form. Alternate translation: “the oldest son ... the second son” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:21

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:22

This continues the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 23:23

This ends the list of Levites according to their clans. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:24

**These were Levi's descendants corresponding to their clans. They were the leaders, counted and listed by name, of the clans**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "These were the names of Levi's descendants and their families, whom David's men counted and listed. They were the leaders of the clans" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

**from twenty years old and upward**

"from 20 years old and older" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 23:25

### has given rest

Here “rest” refers to peace with surrounding nations. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 22:9](#).

### He makes his home in Jerusalem forever

This could mean: (1) Yahweh will be present in Jerusalem forever or (2) Yahweh's temple will be present in Jerusalem forever.

## 1 Chronicles 23:26

### **all the equipment used in its service**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “all the equipment they used in its service”

## 1 Chronicles 23:27

### For by David's last words the Levites were counted

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "For David's last command was for his men to count the Levites" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### from twenty years old and upward

"who were 20 years old and older." See how you translated this phrase in [1 Chronicles 23:24](#). (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## **1 Chronicles 23:28**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 23:29

### bread of the presence

See the Translation Word page about “bread” for the specific definition of “bread of the presence.” See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 9:32](#).

### flour

grain that is ground into a powder

## **1 Chronicles 23:30**

### **They also stood**

Alternate translation: "The Levites also stood at the temple"



## 1 Chronicles 23:31

### **whenever burnt offerings were offered to Yahweh**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “whenever the priests offered burnt offerings to Yahweh” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **new moon festivals**

These holidays marked the beginning of each new month.

### **A fixed number, assigned by decree, always had to be present before Yahweh**

Alternate translation: “A specific number of the Levites were always assigned to be present at the temple to make offerings to Yahweh”

## **1 Chronicles 23:32**

### **They were in charge of**

Alternate translation: "The Levites were responsible for"

## 1 Chronicles 24

### 1 Chronicles 24 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

##### Arranging the priests

David arranged for the order in which priests would be on duty. (See: **priest, priesthood (p.1084)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:1

### General Information:

## General Information:

This chapter describes how the Levites in the previous chapter were divided into work groups with different assignments.

### Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

## **1 Chronicles 24:2**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 24:3

### Ahimelech

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### divided them into groups

Alternate translation: "divided the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar into groups"

## 1 Chronicles 24:4

### they divided

Alternate translation: "David, Zadok, and Ahimelech divided"

### sixteen groups

"16 groups" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### heads of clans

Here "heads" is a metaphor for the more important people—the leaders of the clans. Alternate translation: "leaders of the clans" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### These divisions were eight in number, corresponding to their clans

Alternate translation: "There were 8 divisions based on the clans of Ithamar's descendants"

## 1 Chronicles 24:5

### **They divided them impartially by lot**

Alternate translation: "They divided them by lot so that the divisions would be fair"



## 1 Chronicles 24:6

### Shemaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Nethanel

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 15:24](#).

### Ahimelech

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

### One clan was drawn by lot from Eleazar's descendants, and then the next would be drawn from Ithamar's descendants

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "They chose one by lot from Eleazar's descendants, then they would choose by lot one from Ithamar's descendants" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:7

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins a list of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 24:18](#).

### The first lot & the second

“Lot number 1 ... lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jehoiarib & Jedaiah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:10](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:8

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the third & the fourth

This refers to the third and fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the third lot ... the fourth lot” or “lot number 3 ... lot number 4” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Harim & Seorim

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:9

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the fifth & the sixth

This refers to the fifth and sixth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot ... the sixth lot” or “lot number 5 ... lot number 6” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Malkijah & Mijamin

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:10

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the seventh & the eighth

This refers to the seventh and eighth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot ... the eighth lot” or “lot number 7 ... lot number 8” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Hakkoz & Abijah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:11

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the ninth & the tenth

This refers to the ninth and tenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the ninth lot ... the tenth lot” or “lot number 9 ... lot number 10” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jeshua & Shecaniah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the eleventh & the twelfth

This refers to the eleventh and twelfth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eleventh lot ... the twelfth lot” or “lot number 11 ... lot number 12” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Eliashib & Jakim

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:13

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the thirteenth & the fourteenth

This refers to the thirteenth and fourteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the thirteenth lot ... the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 13 ... lot number 14” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Huppah & Jeshebeab

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 24:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the fifteenth & the sixteenth

This refers to the fifteenth and sixteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifteenth lot ... the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 15 ... lot number 16” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Bilgah & Immer

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:15

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the seventeenth & the eighteenth

This refers to the seventeenth and eighteenth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventeenth lot ... the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 17 ... lot number 18” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Hezir & Happizzez

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:16

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the nineteenth & the twentieth

This refers to the nineteenth and twentieth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot ... the twentieth lot” or “lot number 19 ... lot number 20” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Pethahiah & Jehezkel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the twenty-first & the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-first and twenty-second lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-first lot ... the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 21 ... lot number 22” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jakin & Gamul

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:18

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 24:7](#) of 24 lots that were cast to decide how the descendants of Eleazar and Ithamar would be divided into groups for their work as priests.

### the twenty-third & the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-third and twenty-fourth lots. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot ... the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 23 ... lot number 24” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Delaiah & Maaziah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:19

### **following the procedure given to them by Aaron their ancestor**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “following the rules that Aaron their ancestor gave them” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:20

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins the list of names of the other sons of Levi. This list will end in [1 Chronicles 24:30](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Amram

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 6:3](#).

### Shubael

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#).

## **1 Chronicles 24:21**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## **1 Chronicles 24:22**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 24:23

### Hebron & Jeriah & Amariah & Jahaziel & Jekameam

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#).

### the second & the third & the fourth

“the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:24

### Uzziel & Micah

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

### Shamir

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:25

### Ishijah

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:20](#).

### Zechariah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:26

### Merari & Mahli & Mushi

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

### Jaaziah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### from the son of Jaaziah: Beno

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate "Beno" as "his son" rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: "and from his sons, Jaaziah, his son."

## 1 Chronicles 24:27

### Jaaziah & Shoham & Zaccur & Ibri

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### from Jaaziah: Beno, Shoham

It seems Jaaziah is another son of Merari. And, Beno is the son of Jaaziah. Beno is mentioned in both verses 26 and 27 because he is a leader in his family. However, some Bibles translate "Beno" as "his son" rather than as a proper name. Those Bibles read like this: "from Jaaziah, his son: Shoham."

## 1 Chronicles 24:28

### Mahli & Eleazar

Translate the names of these men as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

## 1 Chronicles 24:29

### From Kish: The son of Kish

This is written in the text as a title, but could be stated in a more complete form. Alternate translation: “These are the sons who were descended from Kish”

### Kish

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

### Jerahmeel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 24:30

### Mushi

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 23:21](#).

### Mahli & Eder & Jerimoth

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 24:31

### Ahimelech

Translate the name of this man as in [1 Chronicles 18:16](#).

## 1 Chronicles 25

### 1 Chronicles 25 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Music

The 24 groups who were chosen to play music in the temple cast lots to see in what order they would serve.

## 1 Chronicles 25:1

### this service

Alternate translation: "the work done at the tabernacle"

### cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### Heman & Jeduthun

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:2

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins a list of leaders of the tabernacle service.

### Zaccur & Joseph & Nethaniah & Asharelah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the sons of Asaph, under the direction of Asaph, who prophesied under the king's supervision

Alternate translation: "these were the sons of Asaph, whom he supervised. Asaph prophesied under the king's supervision"

### under the direction of

Alternate translation: "under the supervision of"

## 1 Chronicles 25:3

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

### **Gedaliah & Zeri & Jeshaiah & Shimei & Hashabiah & Mattithiah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:4

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of leaders of the tabernacle service that was started in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#).

### Heman

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

### **Bukkiah & Mattaniah & Uzziel & Shubael & Jerimoth & Hananiah & Hanani & Eliathah & Giddalti & Romamti-Ezer & Joshbekashah & Mallothi & Hothir & Mahazioth**

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

## 1 Chronicles 25:5

### fourteen sons and three daughters

"14 sons and 3 daughters" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### to lift up his horn

An animal horn is a symbol of strength or authority. To lift up someone's horn is a metaphor for honoring him.  
Alternate translation: "to honor Heman" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)



## 1 Chronicles 25:6

### were under the direction of their fathers

Alternate translation: “were supervised by their fathers”

### cymbals

This refers to two thin, round metal plates that are hit together to make a loud sound. See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:8](#). (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### Jeduthun & Heman

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 16:41](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:7

### numbered 288

“were two hundred and eighty-eight men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:8

**all alike, the same for the young as well as the old, the teacher as well as the student**

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. Alternate translation: “all of them, including the young men and the old men, the teachers and the students” (See: **Merism (p.1028)**) (See: **Merism (p.1028)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:9

### General Information:

## General Information:

This begins the list of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve. This list ends in [1 Chronicles 25:31](#).

### The first lot & the second

“Lot number 1 ... lot number 2.” This shows the order in which the families were chosen by lots. If this is unnatural in your language you may use “The initial” for “The first” and “the next” for all of the following ones. (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### The first lot fell to Joseph’s family

For all of the other people in the list, the text specifies that there were “twelve persons in number.” Since this was likely true for Joseph’s family also, you may want to state it clearly. Alternate translation: “The first lot fell to Joseph’s family, twelve persons in number” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### the second

This refers to the second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Gedaliah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:10

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the third

This refers to the third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the third lot” or “lot number 3” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Zaccur

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 25:11

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the fourth

This refers to the fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourth lot” or “lot number 4” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Izri

This name of this man is spelled Zeri in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the fifth

This refers to the fifth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth lot” or “lot number 5” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Nethaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:2](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:13

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the sixth

This refers to the sixth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixth lot” or “lot number 6” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Bukkiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 25:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the seventh

This refers to the seventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the seventh lot” or “lot number 7” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jesarelah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:15

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the eighth

This refers to the eighth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighth lot” or “lot number 8” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jeshaiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:16

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the ninth

This refers to the ninth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the ninth lot” or “lot number 9” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Mattaniah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the tenth

This refers to the tenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the tenth lot” or “lot number 10” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Shimei

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:18

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the eleventh

This refers to the eleventh lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eleventh lot” or “lot number 11” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Azarel

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the twelfth

This refers to the twelfth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twelfth lot” or “lot number 12” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Hashabiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:20

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the thirteenth

This refers to the thirteenth lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the thirteenth lot" or "lot number 13" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Shubael

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:21

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the fourteenth

This refers to the fourteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fourteenth lot” or “lot number 14” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Mattithiah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 25:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



# 1 Chronicles 25:22

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the fifteenth

This refers to the fifteenth lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the fifteenth lot" or "lot number 15" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Jerimoth

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:23

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the sixteenth

This refers to the sixteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixteenth lot” or “lot number 16” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Hananiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 25:24

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the seventeenth

This refers to the seventeenth lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the seventeenth lot" or "lot number 17" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Joshbekashah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:25

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the eighteenth

This refers to the eighteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the eighteenth lot” or “lot number 18” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Hanani

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 25:26

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the nineteenth

This refers to the nineteenth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the nineteenth lot” or “lot number 19” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Mallothi

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:27

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the twentieth

This refers to the twentieth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twentieth lot” or “lot number 20” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Eliathah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 25:28

## Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

## the twenty-first

This refers to the twenty-first lot. The word "lot" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the twenty-first lot" or "lot number 21" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## Hothir

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#).

## twelve persons in number

"12 people" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:29

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the twenty-second

This refers to the twenty-second lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-second lot” or “lot number 2” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Giddalti

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 25:30

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the twenty-third

This refers to the twenty-third lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-third lot” or “lot number 23” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Mahazioth

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 25:31

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This ends the list begun in [1 Chronicles 25:9](#) of 24 lots that were cast to choose the order in which families would serve.

### the twenty-fourth

This refers to the twenty-fourth lot. The word “lot” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the twenty-fourth lot” or “lot number 24” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### Romamti-Ezer

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 25:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twelve persons in number

“12 people” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26

### 1 Chronicles 26 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

#### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Casting lots

The gatekeepers cast lots to see which gate they would guard. Those who took care of the storage also cast lots.

# 1 Chronicles 26:1

## General Information:

## General Information:

This begins the list of the gatekeepers.

### divisions

groups

### Korahites

See how you translated the name of this people group in [1 Chronicles 19:19](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Meshelemiah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Kore

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Asaph

This is an alternative spelling to "Ebiasaph" in [1 Chronicles 9:19](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:2

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Meshelemiah & Zechariah

See how you translated the names of these men in [1 Chronicles 9:21](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jediael & Zebadiah & Jathniel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the second & the third & the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:3

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Elam & Jehohanan & Eliehoenai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the fifth & the sixth & the seventh

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the fifth son ... the sixth son ... the seventh son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:4

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Obed Edom

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 16:38](#). (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

### Shemaiah & Jehozabad & Joah & Sakar & Nethanel

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

### the second & the third & the fourth & the fifth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say "the next" for each son. The word "son" may be supplied here. Alternate translation: "the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son ... the fifth son" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: [Ordinal Numbers \(p.1043\)](#))

## 1 Chronicles 26:5

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Ammiel & Issachar & Peullethai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the sixth & the seventh & the eighth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the sixth son ... the seventh son ... the eighth son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)



## 1 Chronicles 26:6

### who ruled over their families

“who were leaders in their father’s family.” This means that they were leaders among their clan.

## 1 Chronicles 26:7

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Shemaiah

Translate this name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Othni & Rephael & Obed & Elzabad & Elihu & Semakiah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### His relatives

Alternate translation: "Shemaiah's relatives" or "Shemaiah's family members"

## 1 Chronicles 26:8

### Obed Edom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### sixty-two of them

“62 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:9

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Meshelemiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### eighteen in all

"18 total" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:10

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

This continues the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Hosah & Merari & Shimri

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:11

### Connecting Statement:

### Connecting Statement:

This ends the list of gatekeepers that started in [1 Chronicles 26:1](#).

### Hilkiah & Tabaliah & Zechariah & Hosah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#)) (See: [How to Translate Names \(p.1014\)](#))

### the second & the third & the fourth

This shows the order in which the sons were born. If it is more natural in your language, you may say “the next” for each son. The word “son” may be supplied here. Alternate translation: “the second son ... the third son ... the fourth son” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-ellipsis\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### All of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen were thirteen in number

“There were 13 of Hosah’s sons and kinsmen.” (See: [Numbers \(p.1040\)](#)) (See: [Numbers \(p.1040\)](#))

## 1 Chronicles 26:12

### divisions

groups

## 1 Chronicles 26:13

### threw lots

Alternate translation: "cast lots"

### both young and old

This refers to all of the men by describing the extremes. See how you translated a similar phrase in [1 Chronicles 25:8](#). Alternate translation: "all of them, including the young men and the old men" or "men of all ages" (See: **Merism (p.1028)**) (See: **Merism (p.1028)**)



## 1 Chronicles 26:14

### When the lot was cast

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “When they cast the lot” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Zechariah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:2](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### a prudent advisor

This is a person who shows good judgment in making decisions.

## 1 Chronicles 26:15

### **To Obed Edom was assigned the south gate, and his sons were assigned the storehouses**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Obed Edom was responsible for guarding the south gate, and his sons guarded the storehouses" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **Obed Edom**

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 26:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:16

### Shuppim and Hosah were assigned

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Shuppim and Hosah were responsible for guarding” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Shuppim

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hosah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shalleketh

This is the name of the gate. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Watches were established for each family.

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Each family was responsible for a watch” or “Each family has a set period of time that it was responsible for guarding” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:17

### six Levites

"6 Levites" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### the east & the north & the south

These phrases refer to the gates. Alternate translation: "the east gate ... the north gate ... the south gate" (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

### four a day

This refers to the number of men on guard duty. Alternate translation: "four men each day" or "four Levites each day" (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

### two pairs

"2 pairs of men" or "2 sets of 2 men each" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:18

### At the pillar to the west there were four stationed

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “four men guarded the pillar to the west” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### four stationed at the road and two at the pillar

The numbers “four” and “two” refer to guards. Alternate translation: “Four men guarded the road, and two men guarded the court” (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:19

### They were filled with

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “They were” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Merari

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 26:10](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 26:21

### Ladan & Gershon

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### descended from Gershon through him and who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite

Since it is obvious that Ladan's descendants were also descendants of Ladan's ancestor Gershon, the information about them being Gershon's descendants can be left implicit. Alternate translation: "who were leaders of the families of Ladan the Gershonite" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### Gershonite

A descendant of Gershon. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel." (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 26:22

### the sons of Jehieli: Zetham and Joel his brother

Zetham and Joel were Jehieli's sons.

### Jehieli

This is the name of a man. This is the same person as in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#), but there his name is spelled "Jehiel."  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Zetham & Joel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### They were in charge

The word "They" refers to Jehieli, Zetham, and Joel.

## 1 Chronicles 26:23

### Amram & Izhar & Hebron & Uzziel

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p. 1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:24

### Shubael

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:16](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Gershom

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:25

### Eliezer

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:15](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### His relatives from the clan of Eliezer

These were his relatives who did this work with him. Alternate translation: “His relatives who did the work with him from the clan of Eliezer” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### Rehabiah

Translate the name of this man as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:17](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jeshaiah & Joram & Zichri & Shelomith

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:26

### were over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “were in charge of” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### commanders over thousands and hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the commanders over 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders over large military divisions and the commanders over smaller military divisions” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:27

### plunder

things an army takes from its enemies after a victory

## 1 Chronicles 26:28

### **everything that was set apart to Yahweh by Samuel the prophet & Joab son of Zeruiah**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “everything that Samuel the prophet ... Joab son of Zeruiah set apart to Yahweh” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **Kish & Ner & Zeruiah**

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### **Everything that was set apart**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “Everything that the leaders set apart” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:29

### Izhar

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### civil affairs of Israel

“daily business of the people of Israel.” This refers to the regular business of the people of Israel, not connected to the military or to the temple.

### Kenaniah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 26:30

### Hebron

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)  
(See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hashabiah

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### 1,700 capable men

“one thousand seven hundred capable men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### Yahweh’s work and the king’s work

Alternate translation: “work done for Yahweh and the king.”

## 1 Chronicles 26:31

### Hebron

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:12](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Jeriah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 23:19](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### counted from the lists

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "their names were on the lists" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### In the fortieth year of the reign of David

"When David had been king for 40 years" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **Ordinal Numbers (p.1043)**)

### men of ability

Alternate translation: "capable men"

### Jazer

This is the name of a city. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 26:32

### 2,700 relatives

“two thousand seven hundred family members” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27

### 1 Chronicles 27 General Notes

#### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:1

### This is the list

Alternate translation: "These are the names"

### commanders of thousands and hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### in various ways

Alternate translation: "in different ways" or "in many ways"

### Each military division served month by month throughout the year

This means that each division took turns serving periods of a month at a time.

### Each military division

Alternate translation: "Each group"

### throughout the year

Alternate translation: "all year long"

### twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:2

### Over the division

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the division” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### first month

“month 1.” This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Jashobeam & Zabdiel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:3

### Perez

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:4

### Over the division

Alternate translation: "In charge of the division"

### the second month

"month 2." This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Dodai & Mikloth

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ahoah

See how you translated this man's name in [1 Chronicles 8:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### In his division

Alternate translation: "In his group of soldiers"

### twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 27:5

### the third month

“month 3.” This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Jehoiada

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 11:22](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:6

### Ammizabad

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### the thirty

“the 30.” This refers to “David’s 30 mightiest soldiers.” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### over the thirty

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in charge of the 30 men” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:7

### The commander for the fourth month was Asahel brother of Joab

Alternate translation: "Asahel, brother of Joab, was the commander for the fourth month"

### the fourth month

"month 4." This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Asahel & Zebadiah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### his division

Alternate translation: "his military group"

### twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 27:8

## Shamhuth & Izrah

These are the names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## the fifth month

“month 5.” This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

## twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:9

### the sixth month

“month 6.” This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Ira & Ikkesh

Translate the names of these men the same as you did in [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Tekoa

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:10

### The commander for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim

Alternate translation: "Helez, the Pelonite, from the people of Ephraim, was the commander for the seventh month"

### the seventh month

"month 7." This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Helez the Pelonite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:27](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

"24,000 men" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 27:11

## the eighth month

“month 8.” This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

## Sibbekai the Hushathite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan in [1 Chronicles 11:29](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## Zerah

See how you translated this man’s name in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:12

### the ninth month

“month 9.” This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part November and the first part December on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Abiezer the Anathothite

See how you translated the name of this man and the name of his clan [1 Chronicles 11:28](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## 1 Chronicles 27:13

### the tenth month

“month 10.” This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Maharai

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 11:30](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Zerah

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 2:4](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

# 1 Chronicles 27:14

## the eleventh month

“month 11.” This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

## Pirathon

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:15

### the twelfth month

“month 12.” This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on Western calendars. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-hebrewmonths\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-ordinal\]\]](#)) (See: **Hebrew Months (p.1011)**)

### Heldai & Othniel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Netophah

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### twenty-four thousand men

“24,000 men” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:16

### Eliezer & Zichri & Shephatiah & Maacah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:17

### Hashabiah & Kemuel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Zadok

See how you translated the hame of this man in [1 Chronicles 6:8](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:18

### Omri

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Elihu

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 12:20](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Michael

See how you translated the name of this man in [1 Chronicles 7:3](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:19

### Ishmaiah & Obadiah & Jerimoth & Azriel

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:20

### Hoshea & Azaziah & Joel & Pedaiah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 27:21

### Iddo & Zechariah & Jaasiel & Abner

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:22

### Azare! & Jeroham

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:23

### those twenty years old or younger

“people 20 years old or younger” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### to increase Israel like the stars of heaven

This speaks of the number of people in Israel increasing as if they would become as numerous as the stars.

Alternate translation: “to increase the number of people in Israel to be as many as the stars in the heavens” (See: **Simile (p.1063)**) (See: **Simile (p.1063)**)

### increase Israel

Here “Israel” represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “increase the population of Israel” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:24

### Zeruiah

See how you translated this woman's name in [1 Chronicles 2:16](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Wrath fell on Israel

This speaks of God punishing the people as if his "wrath" were something that fell upon them. Alternate translation: "God punished the people of Israel" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### This number was not written down

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "No one wrote this number down" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:25

### Azmaveth & Adiel & Jonathan & Uzziah

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### in charge of

Alternate translation: "responsible for guarding"

### was over

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "was in charge of" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### fortified towers

Alternate translation: "strong towers"

## 1 Chronicles 27:26

### Ezri & Kelub

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### plowed the land

This means to dig into or break up the dirt before planting.

## 1 Chronicles 27:27

### Zabdi

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Ramathite

This is the name of a person from the city of Ramah. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shiphmite

This is the name of a person from the city of Shepham. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### wine cellars

These are the parts of a building that are below the ground and used to store wine.

## 1 Chronicles 27:28

### Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### sycamore

This is a type of tree. (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**) (See: **Translate Unknowns (p.1074)**)

### Baal-Hanan

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Geder

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)



## 1 Chronicles 27:29

### Sharon

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Shitrai & Shaphat & Adlai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### that were pastured

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “that ate grass in the fields” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

# 1 Chronicles 27:30

## Over the

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “In charge of the” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## Obil & Jehdeiah & Jaziz

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## Ishmaelite

Translate the name of this clan as you did in [1 Chronicles 2:17](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## Meronoth

This is the name of a place. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:31

### Jaziz

This is the name of a man. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Hagrite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in [1 Chronicles 5:10](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### All these officials

Alternate translation: "All of these men"

## 1 Chronicles 27:32

### Jonathan & Jehiel & Hakmoni

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:33

### Ahithophel & Hushai

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Arkite

This is the name of a tribe or clan. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 27:34

### Ahithophel & Jehoiada

These are names of men. (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

# 1 Chronicles 28

## 1 Chronicles 28 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple continues in this chapter. David lectured the people and Solomon on what they should do. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### David's instructions

David gives instructions to the people because he knows that he will not be there when the temple is built. It was common in the ancient Near East for leaders to give instructions to people before they die in preparation or anticipation of their death.

## 1 Chronicles 28:1

### assembled

called together

### scheduled work

Work that needs to be repeated, for example every day or every month.

### the commanders of thousands and of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions” See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### the managers over

The word “over” is used here as an idiom. Alternate translation: “the managers in charge of” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### property and possessions

These two words share similar meanings and refer to all of the items and lands that the king owned. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)



## 1 Chronicles 28:2

### rose to his feet

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “stood up” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### my brothers and my people

These two phrases share similar meanings and emphasize that David and the people of Israel are family. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### the ark of the covenant of Yahweh; a footstool for our God

The second phrase defines the first phrase. The “ark of the covenant” is spoke of as Yahweh’s footstool to picture God on his throne, with his feet resting on his footstool, which represents all that is in submission to him. (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:3

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

### a temple for my name

Here God refers to himself by his "name." Alternate translation: "a temple for me" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### a man of war and have shed blood

"a man accustomed to war and have shed blood." Both descriptions emphasize the same thing, namely that David had killed people. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### have shed blood

This refers to killing people. Alternate translation: "have killed people" (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**) (See: **Euphemism (p.1002)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:4

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

### **chose me & to be king over Israel forever**

One possible meaning is that here David is a metonym for David and his descendants who will rule Israel forever. Alternate translation: “chose me and my descendants ... to be kings over Israel forever” Another is that David will continue to be the king of Israel after he is resurrected from the dead. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **all Israel**

Alternate translation: “the whole land of Israel” or “all the Israelites”

## 1 Chronicles 28:5

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

### to sit on the throne of

Here “to sit on the throne” means to rule as king. Alternate translation: “to rule over” or “to be the king of” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### the kingdom of Yahweh, over Israel

Alternate translation: “Israel, which is Yahweh’s kingdom”

## 1 Chronicles 28:6

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

### He said to me

Alternate translation: "God said to me"

### my house

The word "house" refers to the temple of Yahweh.

### I have chosen him to be my son, and I will be his father

This does not mean that Solomon becomes an actual son of God, but it describes the personal relationship that he and God will have. Alternate translation: "I have chosen to treat him like a son, and I will be like a father to him" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:7

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to the Israelites.

### **my commandments and decrees**

These two words basically mean the same thing and refer to everything that Yahweh had commanded. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### **as you are this day**

The word “you” here refers to David. Also, the understood word “committed” may be supplied. Alternate translation: “just as you are committed this day” (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:8

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to the Israelites.

### Now then, in the sight of all Israel & all of you must

Here David is giving a command to all of the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Now then, in the sight of all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh, and in the presence of our God, I command all of you to” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

### Now then

This indicates that David starts a new phase in his speech.

### all Israel, this assembly for Yahweh

These two phrases have the same meaning and the second describes the first. Even though all of the people of Israel are not present, those present represent all of Israel. Alternate translation: “all you people of Israel, in this assembly for Yahweh” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-parallelism\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### in the sight of

The phrase “in the sight of” means that they are all present and listening. Alternate translation: “in the hearing of” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### keep and try to carry out

The phrase “to carry out” means basically the same thing as “keep.” Together the words emphasize importance of doing what God commands. Alternate translation: “carefully obey” (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### your children after you forever

This means that the land will belong to their children and the descendants in the future. The phrase “after you” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “your children and your descendants who will take your place after you die” (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:9

### the God of your father

David calls himself “your father” because this is a very formal occasion. Alternate translation: “my God” (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**) (See: **First, Second or Third Person (p.1008)**)

### with your whole heart

Here the “heart” the represents the whole person. To do something with “your whole heart” is an idiom. Alternate translation: “with complete devotion” or “completely” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-idiom\]\]](#)) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### a willing spirit

Here the “spirit” represents the whole person and emphasizes the person’s will. Alternate translation: “willingly” (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**) (See: **Synecdoche (p.1070)**)

### searches all hearts and understands every motivation of everyone’s thoughts

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh knows the thoughts and motives of every person. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

### all hearts

Here people’s “hearts” represent their feelings and desires. Alternate translation: “searches everyone’s emotions and desires” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### If you seek him, he will be found by you

This can be written in active form. Also, this speaks of following Yahweh and having him listen to you as searching for him and finding him. Alternate translation: “If you seek him, you will find him” or “If you try to get Yahweh to pay attention to you, he will do so” (See: [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-activepassive\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc://ta/man/translate/figs-metaphor\]\]](#)) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)



## 1 Chronicles 28:10

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues speaking to Solomon.

### Realize that

Alternate translation: "Be aware that" or "Be sure you remember that"

### Be strong and do it

The word "strong" here refers to willpower and strength of character.

## 1 Chronicles 28:11

### temple portico

“temple porch” or “temple entrance.” This refers to the columns that supported the roof at the entrance of the temple.

## 1 Chronicles 28:12

### treasuries

storerooms for valuable things

## **1 Chronicles 28:13**

### **regulations**

These were specific rules about how the priests and Levites should work in the temple.

### **divisions of the priests and Levites**

“groups of the priests and Levites.” This refers to the groups in which the priests and other temple workers were organized to fulfill their duties.

## **1 Chronicles 28:14**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## **1 Chronicles 28:15**

### **according to the use of each lampstand in the service**

“determined by what each lampstand would be used for in the service in the temple.” There would be silver lampstands of different weights for different purposes.

## 1 Chronicles 28:16

### for every table

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: “the weight of the gold for every other table”  
(See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## **1 Chronicles 28:17**

(There are no notes for this verse.)



## 1 Chronicles 28:18

### refined gold

Alternate translation: “purified gold” or “extra valuable gold”

### of the gold for the design

The refers to the weight of the gold. Alternate translation: “the weight of the gold for the design” (See: **Ellipsis (p. 999)**) (See: **Ellipsis (p.999)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:19

### I have put all this in writing

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "I wrote all of this down" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### gave me to understand regarding the design

This refers to the detail for the design of the temple. Alternate translation: "helped me to understand the details for his temple" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:20

### strong and brave

These two words basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must be courageous. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### Do not be afraid or anxious

The words “afraid” and “anxious” basically mean the same thing and emphasize that Solomon must never give up. Also, this can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “Be courageous” or “Be confident” (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

### is with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “will help you” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### He will not leave you nor abandon you

These two phrases mean the same thing and emphasize that Yahweh will always be with Solomon. Also, this can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He will always be with you” (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

## 1 Chronicles 28:21

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes speaking to Solomon.

### See, here are the divisions

“Here are the divisions.” David uses the word “see” here to refer back to the listings of the divisions of the Levites and their duties for the temple.

### the divisions of the priests and Levites

See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 28:13](#).

# 1 Chronicles 29

## 1 Chronicles 29 General Notes

### Structure and formatting

The preparation for the temple is finished in this chapter. (See: **temple, house, house of God (p.1086)**)

### Special concepts in this chapter

#### Offering

David and the people made a free will offering and dedicated it all to God.

## **1 Chronicles 29:1**

**whom alone God has chosen**

Alternate translation: "the one whom God has chosen"

## 1 Chronicles 29:2

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

### **gold for the things to be made of gold & to be made of wood**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gold so the craftsmen may make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, bronze so they may make the bronze things, iron so they may make the iron things, and wood so they may make the wooden things” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **onyx stones & stones to be set & stones for inlaid work of various colors**

Each of these phrases refer to different types of stones intended for different purposes.

#### **onyx stones**

These are stones with black and white lines that are used to make jewelry.

#### **stones to be set**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “stones for the craftsmen to set” or “stones for mounting”

#### **inlaid work**

This refers to the beautiful and decorative designs or patterns formed by the stones.

## **1 Chronicles 29:3**

### **Connecting Statement:**

### **Connecting Statement:**

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.



## 1 Chronicles 29:4

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

### three thousand talents

"3,000 talents." This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "about 100,000 kilograms" or "about 100 metric tons" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### gold from Ophir

This was the best quality and most valuable gold.

### seven thousand talents

"7,000 talents." This can be stated in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "about 230,000 kilograms" or "230 metric tons" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-bmoney\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/translate-numbers\]\]](#)) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:5

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes talking to the people about his provisions for the building of the temple.

### **gold for the things to be made of gold & work to be done by craftsmen**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “gold for the craftsmen to make the gold things, silver so they may make the silver things, and things of all kinds for their other work” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **give himself to him**

Alternate translation: “give himself to God”

## 1 Chronicles 29:6

### General Information:

## General Information:

(See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

**Then freewill offerings were made by the leaders & and by the officials over the king's work.**

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "Then the leaders ... and the officials over the king's work made freewill offerings" (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### **the commanders of thousands and hundreds**

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the commanders of 100 soldiers" or (2) the words translated as "thousands" and "hundreds" do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: "the commanders of large military divisions and the commanders of smaller military divisions" See how you translated this in [1 Chronicles 13:1](#). (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

### **the officials over the king's work**

Here the word "over" is used as an idiom. Alternate translation: "the officials in charge of the king's work" (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:7

### five thousand talents & and 100,000 talents of iron

"5,000 talents and 10,000 darics of gold, 10,000 talents of silver, 18,000 talents of bronze, and 100,000 talents of iron." These may be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "165 metric tons and 84 kilograms of gold, 330 metric tons of silver, 600 metric tons of bronze, and 3,300 metric tons of iron" (See: **Biblical Money (p. 995)**) (See: **Biblical Money (p.995)**)

### 100,000 talents

"one hundred thousand talents" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:8

### treasury

This is a place where money and valuable objects are kept.

### Jehiel

See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:8](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

### Gershon

This was the firstborn son of Levi. See how you translated these men's names in [1 Chronicles 23:7](#). (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**) (See: **How to Translate Names (p.1014)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:9

### **wholeheartedly**

willingly and without any doubt or hesitation

## 1 Chronicles 29:10

### May you be praised

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: “May people praise you” (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

### Israel our ancestor

Here “Israel” refers to the man Jacob. Alternate translation: “Jacob our ancestor” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## **1 Chronicles 29:11**

### **Connecting Statement:**

### **Connecting Statement:**

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.



## 1 Chronicles 29:12

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### In your hand is power and might

This speaks of Yahweh having control over whether people are powerful or not as if “power and might” were something in hand that he had control over. Alternate translation: “You determine who has power and might” (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### power and might

The words “power” and “might” mean the same thing and emphasize the greatness of Yahweh’s power. (See: **Doublet (p.997)**) (See: **Doublet (p.997)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:13

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### **your glorious name**

Here Yahweh is represented by his name. Alternate translation: “you who are glorious” or “you because you are glorious” (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:14

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

**But who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer so willingly these things?**

David uses this rhetorical question to express that he and his people deserve no praise for giving anything to God. Alternate translation: "My people and I should definitely offer these things to you willingly!" (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**) (See: **Rhetorical Question (p.1060)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:15

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### **we are strangers and travelers before you**

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were travelers only here on earth for a short time. Alternate translation: "For our lives are short and we are like strangers and travelers who pass before you" (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**) (See: **Metaphor (p.1030)**)

### **Our days on the earth are like a shadow**

This speaks of people's lives being short as if they were a shadow that is only visible for a short time. A person's lifetime is represented by his "days." Alternate translation: "Our time here on earth is like a shadow that disappears quickly" (See: [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-simile\]\]](#) and [\[\[rc:///ta/man/translate/figs-synecdoche\]\]](#)) (See: **Simile (p.1063)**)

## **1 Chronicles 29:16**

### **Connecting Statement:**

### **Connecting Statement:**

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

## 1 Chronicles 29:17

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### **you examine the heart**

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings. Alternate translation: "you examine people's thoughts" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **in the uprightness of my heart**

Here the "heart" represents a person's thoughts and feelings. Alternate translation: "because I want to be honest and honorable in everything I do for you" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **I look with joy as**

Alternate translation: "I am joyful as I see"

## 1 Chronicles 29:18

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David continues his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### **keep this forever in the thoughts of the minds of your people**

Alternate translation: "keep this in the thoughts and minds of your people forever"

### **Direct their hearts toward you**

Here the people's "hearts" represent their thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: "Direct them to be loyal to you" or "Keep them loyal to you" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:19

### Connecting Statement:

## Connecting Statement:

David finishes his prayer of praise to Yahweh.

### Give to Solomon my son a wholehearted desire

The word “desire” may be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “Make my son Solomon fully desire” (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**) (See: **Abstract Nouns (p.981)**)



## 1 Chronicles 29:20

### Now bless Yahweh

Alternate translation: "Now praise Yahweh"

### prostrated themselves before the king

This refers to laying down on the ground before someone to show great respect. Alternate translation: "prostrated themselves on the ground to show respect to Yahweh and the king" (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**) (See: **Symbolic Action (p.1066)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:21

### **they made sacrifices to Yahweh and offered burnt offerings to him**

The people offered animals to be sacrificed to Yahweh by the priests. Most of the people did not actually kill and sacrifice the animals themselves. (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

### **a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, and a thousand lambs**

“1,000 bulls, 1,000 rams, and 1,000 lambs” (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:22

### before Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in honor of Yahweh” (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**) (See: **Idiom (p.1023)**)

### a second time

This means that they anointed him and declared him as king. The first time is described in [1 Chronicles 23:1](#).

### anointed him with Yahweh’s authority to be ruler

To do something with “Yahweh’s authority” means to do it on his behalf and with his approval. Alternate translation: “anointed him to rule over Israel on Yahweh’s behalf” (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)

## 1 Chronicles 29:23

### Then Solomon sat on Yahweh's throne as king instead of David his father

Here the throne of Israel is referred to as "Yahweh's throne," to emphasize that the people of Israel are Yahweh's people. Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "So Solomon sat on the throne, instead of his father David, as king over Yahweh's people" (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**) (See: **Metonymy (p.1036)**)

## **1 Chronicles 29:24**

### **gave allegiance to King Solomon**

Alternate translation: "told King Solomon that they would be faithful to him"

## 1 Chronicles 29:25

**Yahweh greatly honored Solomon before all Israel & bestowed on him greater power**

These two phrases emphasize that Solomon received special favor from Yahweh, which made him Israel's greatest and most powerful king. (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**) (See: **Parallelism (p.1046)**)

## **1 Chronicles 29:26**

(There are no notes for this verse.)

## 1 Chronicles 29:27

### forty years & thirty-three years

"40 years ... 33 years" (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**) (See: **Numbers (p.1040)**)



## **1 Chronicles 29:28**

### **at a good old age**

Alternate translation: "as an old man"

## **1 Chronicles 29:29**

**written in the history of Samuel the prophet, & and in the history of Gad the prophet**

These are written accounts that no longer exist.

# 1 Chronicles 29:30

## Recorded there are the deeds

If your language does not use the passive form in this way, you can state this in active form or in another way that is natural in your language. Alternate translation: "There men wrote down the deeds" (See: **Active or Passive (p. 983)**) (See: **Active or Passive (p.983)**)

## the deeds of his rule

Alternate translation: "the things that happened while David was king"

## the events that affected him, Israel, and all the kingdoms of the other lands

"all the things that happened to him and to the people of Israel and in the kingdoms of other countries while he was ruling Israel" (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**) (See: **Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information (p.986)**)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy**

**Version 75**

# Abstract Nouns

## Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

## Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

## Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 7:28](#); [1 Chronicles 16:23](#); [1 Chronicles 16:28](#); [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [1 Chronicles 16:34](#); [1 Chronicles 17:13](#); [1 Chronicles 17:18](#); [1 Chronicles 18:14](#); [1 Chronicles 19:2](#); [1 Chronicles 29:19](#)

## Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Verbs* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

## Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

## Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

## Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**.  
(Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

## Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action. (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone." (3) Use a different verb.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

**The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea. It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Abstract Nouns* ([UTA PDF](#))  
*Word Order* ([UTA PDF](#))



**Referenced in:** 1 Chronicles 2:3; 1 Chronicles 5:1; 1 Chronicles 5:7; 1 Chronicles 5:17; 1 Chronicles 6:32; 1 Chronicles 6:48; 1 Chronicles 6:54; 1 Chronicles 6:74; 1 Chronicles 6:76; 1 Chronicles 6:77; 1 Chronicles 6:78; 1 Chronicles 6:80; 1 Chronicles 7:21; 1 Chronicles 9:1; 1 Chronicles 9:22; 1 Chronicles 9:24; 1 Chronicles 9:26; 1 Chronicles 9:28; 1 Chronicles 9:29; 1 Chronicles 11:3; 1 Chronicles 11:6; 1 Chronicles 11:20; 1 Chronicles 11:21; 1 Chronicles 11:24; 1 Chronicles 11:25; 1 Chronicles 12:1; 1 Chronicles 13:2; 1 Chronicles 13:11; 1 Chronicles 14:8; 1 Chronicles 14:12; 1 Chronicles 15:2; 1 Chronicles 15:15; 1 Chronicles 15:19; 1 Chronicles 15:27; 1 Chronicles 16:25; 1 Chronicles 17:9; 1 Chronicles 17:14; 1 Chronicles 17:23; 1 Chronicles 17:24; 1 Chronicles 17:27; 1 Chronicles 19:17; 1 Chronicles 19:19; 1 Chronicles 20:2; 1 Chronicles 20:4; 1 Chronicles 21:6; 1 Chronicles 22:3; 1 Chronicles 22:4; 1 Chronicles 22:5; 1 Chronicles 22:18; 1 Chronicles 23:3; 1 Chronicles 23:11; 1 Chronicles 23:13; 1 Chronicles 23:14; 1 Chronicles 23:24; 1 Chronicles 23:27; 1 Chronicles 23:31; 1 Chronicles 24:6; 1 Chronicles 24:19; 1 Chronicles 26:14; 1 Chronicles 26:15; 1 Chronicles 26:16; 1 Chronicles 26:18; 1 Chronicles 26:19; 1 Chronicles 26:28; 1 Chronicles 26:31; 1 Chronicles 27:24; 1 Chronicles 27:29; 1 Chronicles 28:9; 1 Chronicles 29:2; 1 Chronicles 29:5; 1 Chronicles 29:6; 1 Chronicles 29:10; 1 Chronicles 29:30

## Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

### Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

### Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

### Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.  
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

## Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
- (2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.** or: At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 6:54](#); [1 Chronicles 10:1](#); [1 Chronicles 11:10](#); [1 Chronicles 11:18](#); [1 Chronicles 11:23](#); [1 Chronicles 12 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 12:17](#); [1 Chronicles 12:33](#); [1 Chronicles 13:2](#); [1 Chronicles 13:6](#); [1 Chronicles 14:8](#); [1 Chronicles 15:18](#); [1 Chronicles 16:19](#); [1 Chronicles 16:29](#); [1 Chronicles 16:32](#); [1 Chronicles 16:37](#); [1 Chronicles 16:42](#); [1 Chronicles 17:1](#); [1 Chronicles 17:5](#); [1 Chronicles 17:21](#); [1 Chronicles 21:4](#); [1 Chronicles 21:12](#); [1 Chronicles 21:20](#); [1 Chronicles 21:23](#); [1 Chronicles 22:9](#); [1 Chronicles 25:9](#); [1 Chronicles 26:21](#); [1 Chronicles 26:25](#); [1 Chronicles 28:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:19](#); [1 Chronicles 29:10](#); [1 Chronicles 29:22](#); [1 Chronicles 29:30](#)

# Background Information

## Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Order of Events* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Example** — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day," "He once killed three wild pigs in one day," and "that they had brought with them."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were," rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "their village was going to have a feast the next day," and "Peter **was** the best hunter in the village."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

## A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story

- Setting includes:
  - where the story takes place
  - when the story takes place
  - who is present when the story begins
  - what is happening when the story begins

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

## Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself **was beginning about 30 years old**. He **was the son** (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli, (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he **was going through the grain fields**, and his disciples **were picking and eating the heads of grain, rubbing them in their hands**. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said ...."

## Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

**And** Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

As here, English sometimes uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrase happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

- (2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.  
**Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.** (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and **he did many other evil things**, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Connecting Words and Phrases* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Introduction of a New Event* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 5:1](#); [1 Chronicles 5:2](#); [1 Chronicles 11:2](#); [1 Chronicles 11:4](#); [1 Chronicles 18:8](#); [1 Chronicles 20:1](#); [1 Chronicles 21:29](#); [1 Chronicles 21:30](#); [1 Chronicles 22:4](#)

# Biblical Distance

## Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong," which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]  
[Fractions \(UTA PDF\)](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

## Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters," readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter," "45 centimeters," or "50 centimeters."

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.



## Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; <sup>1</sup> its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; <sup>2</sup> and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> two and a half cubits <sup>[2]</sup> one cubit and a half

”

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 11:23](#)

# Biblical Money

## Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

## Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

## Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.
- (5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

## Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

1 The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

1 "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

1 "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

1 "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

1 "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

1 [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

1 "The one owed **500 denarii**,1 and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Translate Unknowns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 19:6](#); [1 Chronicles 20:2](#); [1 Chronicles 21:25](#); [1 Chronicles 22:14](#); [1 Chronicles 29:4](#); [1 Chronicles 29:7](#)

# Doublet

## Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike [Hendiadys](#), in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

A very similar issue is the repetition of the same word or phrase for emphasis, usually with no other words between them. Because these figures of speech are so similar and have the same effect, we will treat them here together.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

## Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, “**Master! Master!** We are perishing!” (Luke 8:24 ULT)

The repetition of “Master” means that the disciples called to Jesus urgently and continually.

## Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

## Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

"You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

"He has one people **very spread out**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

"... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**."

Then they approached {and} woke him up, saying, "**Master! Master!** We are perishing!" (Luke 8:24 ULT)

Then they approached {and} woke him up, **urgently shouting, "Master!**  
We are perishing!"

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 11:17](#); [1 Chronicles 11:18](#); [1 Chronicles 12:18](#); [1 Chronicles 17:5](#); [1 Chronicles 28:1](#); [1 Chronicles 28:2](#); [1 Chronicles 28:7](#); [1 Chronicles 28:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:20](#); [1 Chronicles 29:12](#)

# Ellipsis

## Description

An ellipsis<sup>1</sup> occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**  
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

## Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

## Examples From the Bible

### Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise.** (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Structure* ([UTA PDF](#))

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

## Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

## Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight.**” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.



English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence. ↩

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 2:13](#); [1 Chronicles 2:14](#); [1 Chronicles 2:15](#); [1 Chronicles 10:6](#); [1 Chronicles 16:12](#); [1 Chronicles 16:16](#); [1 Chronicles 23:11](#); [1 Chronicles 23:19](#); [1 Chronicles 23:20](#); [1 Chronicles 26:17](#); [1 Chronicles 26:18](#); [1 Chronicles 28:7](#); [1 Chronicles 28:16](#); [1 Chronicles 28:18](#)

# Euphemism

## Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.  
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

## Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

## Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, "How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**"

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

"They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa."

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 2:24](#); [1 Chronicles 5:1](#); [1 Chronicles 7:23](#); [1 Chronicles 10:8](#); [1 Chronicles 11:14](#); [1 Chronicles 28:3](#)

# Exclamations

## Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people said helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Sentence Types* ([UTA PDF](#))

Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25b ULT)

When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

## Examples From the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah." The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

**Oh**, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Alas" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why," even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

**How** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are."
- (2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
- (3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
- (4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
- (5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is “is” or “are.”

You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22b ULT)

“You **are** such a worthless person!”

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!”

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. In the first suggested translation below, the word “wow” shows that they were astonished. In the second suggested translation, the expression “Oh no” shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were extremely astonished, saying, “He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf hear and the mute speak.” (Mark 7:37 ULT)

“They were extremely astonished, saying, ‘**Wow!** He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.’”

Alas, oh my Lord Yahweh! For because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22b ULT)

“**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

“**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

“Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me?** For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” “**Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33b ULT)

“His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!”

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, “**Alas**, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!” (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, “**Alas**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!”

”

Referenced in: [1 Chronicles 21:15](#)

# Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

## Description

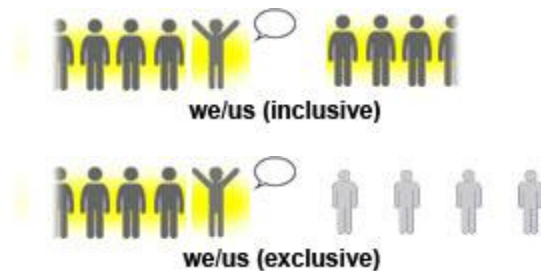
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

## Examples From the Bible

### Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

**We** have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

### Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*When Masculine Words Include Women* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 17:20](#)

## First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

### Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Making Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information Explicit* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Pronouns* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

### Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”



## Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Forms of You (UTA PDF)*

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 17:17](#); [1 Chronicles 17:19](#); [1 Chronicles 17:23](#); [1 Chronicles 17:25](#); [1 Chronicles 17:27](#); [1 Chronicles 21:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:9](#)

## Forms of You

### Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Forms of ‘You’ — Singular* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Forms of ‘You’ — Dual/Plural* ([UTA PDF](#))

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_younum](https://ufw.io/figs_younum).

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd. For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)

### Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he or she is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at [https://ufw.io/figs\\_youform](https://ufw.io/figs_youform).

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- [Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal](#)

### Masculine and Feminine

Some languages have a **masculine** form and a **feminine** form of the word for “you.” People use the **masculine** form when speaking to a man or boy and the **feminine** form when speaking to a woman or girl.

English does not make any of the above distinctions, so they are absent in the ULT. Please be aware of this and use the appropriate forms of “you” if your language does make any of these distinctions.

”

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 22:18](#); [1 Chronicles 22:19](#)

# Hebrew Months

## Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

## List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

**Aviv** — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

**Ziv** — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

**Sivan** — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

**Tammuz** — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

**Ab** — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

**Elul** — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

**Ethanim** — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

**Bul** — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

**Kislev** — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

**Tebeth** — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

**Shebat** — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

**Adar** — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

## Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
- (2) Use the names for months that people know.
- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**<sup>1</sup> you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Ordinal Numbers* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 12:15](#); [1 Chronicles 27:2](#); [1 Chronicles 27:4](#); [1 Chronicles 27:5](#); [1 Chronicles 27:7](#); [1 Chronicles 27:8](#); [1 Chronicles 27:9](#); [1 Chronicles 27:10](#); [1 Chronicles 27:11](#); [1 Chronicles 27:12](#); [1 Chronicles 27:13](#); [1 Chronicles 27:14](#); [1 Chronicles 27:15](#)

# How to Translate Names

## Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Translate Unknowns* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

## Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

**Saul** was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.”

- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?”  
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called “Saul” before Acts 13 and “Paul” after Acts 13. You could translate his name as “Paul” all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** <sup>1</sup>

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> Most versions say “Saul” here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called “Paul.”

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write “Saul” where the source text has “Saul” and “Paul” where the source text has “Paul.”

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**<sup>1</sup> and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

<sup>[1]</sup> This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words ([UTA PDF](#))



[illegible]

Chronicles 11:22; 1 Chronicles 11:27; 1 Chronicles 11:28; 1 Chronicles 11:29; 1 Chronicles 11:30; 1 Chronicles 11:31; 1 Chronicles 11:32; 1 Chronicles 11:33; 1 Chronicles 11:34; 1 Chronicles 11:35; 1 Chronicles 11:36; 1 Chronicles 11:37; 1 Chronicles 11:38; 1 Chronicles 11:39; 1 Chronicles 11:40; 1 Chronicles 11:41; 1 Chronicles 11:42; 1 Chronicles 11:43; 1 Chronicles 11:44; 1 Chronicles 11:45; 1 Chronicles 11:46; 1 Chronicles 11:47; 1 Chronicles 12:3; 1 Chronicles 12:4; 1 Chronicles 12:5; 1 Chronicles 12:6; 1 Chronicles 12:7; 1 Chronicles 12:8; 1 Chronicles 12:9; 1 Chronicles 12:10; 1 Chronicles 12:11; 1 Chronicles 12:12; 1 Chronicles 12:13; 1 Chronicles 12:18; 1 Chronicles 12:20; 1 Chronicles 12:27; 1 Chronicles 13:5; 1 Chronicles 13:6; 1 Chronicles 13:7; 1 Chronicles 13:9; 1 Chronicles 13:11; 1 Chronicles 13:13; 1 Chronicles 14:1; 1 Chronicles 14:4; 1 Chronicles 14:5; 1 Chronicles 14:6; 1 Chronicles 14:7; 1 Chronicles 14:9; 1 Chronicles 14:11; 1 Chronicles 14:14; 1 Chronicles 14:16; 1 Chronicles 15:4; 1 Chronicles 15:6; 1 Chronicles 15:7; 1 Chronicles 15:8; 1 Chronicles 15:9; 1 Chronicles 15:10; 1 Chronicles 15:11; 1 Chronicles 15:17; 1 Chronicles 15:18; 1 Chronicles 15:19; 1 Chronicles 15:20; 1 Chronicles 15:21; 1 Chronicles 15:22; 1 Chronicles 15:23; 1 Chronicles 15:24; 1 Chronicles 15:25; 1 Chronicles 15:27; 1 Chronicles 15:29; 1 Chronicles 16:5; 1 Chronicles 16:6; 1 Chronicles 16:38; 1 Chronicles 16:41; 1 Chronicles 18:3; 1 Chronicles 18:8; 1 Chronicles 18:9; 1 Chronicles 18:10; 1 Chronicles 18:12; 1 Chronicles 18:15; 1 Chronicles 18:16; 1 Chronicles 18:17; 1 Chronicles 19:1; 1 Chronicles 19:2; 1 Chronicles 19:6; 1 Chronicles 19:7; 1 Chronicles 19:11; 1 Chronicles 19:16; 1 Chronicles 20:4; 1 Chronicles 20:5; 1 Chronicles 20:6; 1 Chronicles 21:15; 1 Chronicles 23:6; 1 Chronicles 23:7; 1 Chronicles 23:8; 1 Chronicles 23:9; 1 Chronicles 23:10; 1 Chronicles 23:11; 1 Chronicles 23:12; 1 Chronicles 23:13; 1 Chronicles 23:15; 1 Chronicles 23:16; 1 Chronicles 23:17; 1 Chronicles 23:18; 1 Chronicles 23:19; 1 Chronicles 23:20; 1 Chronicles 23:21; 1 Chronicles 23:22; 1 Chronicles 23:23; 1 Chronicles 24:3; 1 Chronicles 24:6; 1 Chronicles 24:7; 1 Chronicles 24:8; 1 Chronicles 24:9; 1 Chronicles 24:10; 1 Chronicles 24:11; 1 Chronicles 24:12; 1 Chronicles 24:13; 1 Chronicles 24:14; 1 Chronicles 24:15; 1 Chronicles 24:16; 1 Chronicles 24:17; 1 Chronicles 24:18; 1 Chronicles 24:20; 1 Chronicles 24:24; 1 Chronicles 24:25; 1 Chronicles 24:26; 1 Chronicles 24:27; 1 Chronicles 24:29; 1 Chronicles 24:30; 1 Chronicles 25:1; 1 Chronicles 25:2; 1 Chronicles 25:3; 1 Chronicles 25:4; 1 Chronicles 25:6; 1 Chronicles 25:9; 1 Chronicles 25:10; 1 Chronicles 25:11; 1 Chronicles 25:12; 1 Chronicles 25:13; 1 Chronicles 25:14; 1 Chronicles 25:15; 1 Chronicles 25:16; 1 Chronicles 25:17; 1 Chronicles 25:18; 1 Chronicles 25:19; 1 Chronicles 25:20; 1 Chronicles 25:21; 1 Chronicles 25:22; 1 Chronicles 25:23; 1 Chronicles 25:24; 1 Chronicles 25:29; 1 Chronicles 25:30; 1 Chronicles 25:31; 1 Chronicles 26:1; 1 Chronicles 26:2; 1 Chronicles 26:3; 1 Chronicles 26:4; 1 Chronicles 26:5; 1 Chronicles 26:7; 1 Chronicles 26:8; 1 Chronicles 26:9; 1 Chronicles 26:10; 1 Chronicles 26:11; 1 Chronicles 26:14; 1 Chronicles 26:15; 1 Chronicles 26:16; 1 Chronicles 26:19; 1 Chronicles 26:21; 1 Chronicles 26:22; 1 Chronicles 26:23; 1 Chronicles 26:24; 1 Chronicles 26:25; 1 Chronicles 26:28; 1 Chronicles 26:29; 1 Chronicles 26:30; 1 Chronicles 26:31; 1 Chronicles 27:2; 1 Chronicles 27:3; 1 Chronicles 27:4; 1 Chronicles 27:5; 1 Chronicles 27:6; 1 Chronicles 27:7; 1 Chronicles 27:8; 1 Chronicles 27:9; 1 Chronicles 27:10; 1 Chronicles 27:11; 1 Chronicles 27:12; 1 Chronicles 27:13; 1 Chronicles 27:14; 1 Chronicles 27:15; 1 Chronicles 27:16; 1 Chronicles 27:17; 1 Chronicles 27:18; 1 Chronicles 27:19; 1 Chronicles 27:20; 1 Chronicles 27:21; 1 Chronicles 27:22; 1 Chronicles 27:24; 1 Chronicles 27:25; 1 Chronicles 27:26; 1 Chronicles 27:27; 1 Chronicles 27:28; 1 Chronicles 27:29; 1 Chronicles 27:30; 1 Chronicles 27:31; 1 Chronicles 27:32; 1 Chronicles 27:33; 1 Chronicles 27:34; 1 Chronicles 29:8

# Hyperbole

## Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

## Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any,” or “rarely.”

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

## Examples From the Bible

### Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

### Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

**A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches**. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

## Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

## Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

**The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame.** (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

**In general**, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

**Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. or:

**Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 10:1](#); [1 Chronicles 10:7](#); [1 Chronicles 10:11](#); [1 Chronicles 11:1](#); [1 Chronicles 12:8](#); [1 Chronicles 13:5](#); [1 Chronicles 13:8](#); [1 Chronicles 15:3](#); [1 Chronicles 15:28](#); [1 Chronicles 16:22](#); [1 Chronicles 16:36](#); [1 Chronicles 19:17](#); [1 Chronicles 21:3](#); [1 Chronicles 22:15](#)

## Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

**Purpose:** An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

## Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

■ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

■ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

## Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

■ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

■ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

■ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

■ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

■ I am crying my **eyes out**

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 8:29](#); [1 Chronicles 10:14](#); [1 Chronicles 11:1](#); [1 Chronicles 11:5](#); [1 Chronicles 11:23](#); [1 Chronicles 12:22](#); [1 Chronicles 13:2](#); [1 Chronicles 13:6](#); [1 Chronicles 14:2](#); [1 Chronicles 14:10](#); [1 Chronicles 15:13](#); [1 Chronicles 15:16](#); [1 Chronicles 16:11](#); [1 Chronicles 16:15](#); [1 Chronicles 16:16](#); [1 Chronicles 17:2](#); [1 Chronicles 17:3](#); [1 Chronicles 17:8](#); [1 Chronicles 17:10](#); [1 Chronicles 17:17](#); [1 Chronicles 19:5](#); [1 Chronicles 21:8](#); [1 Chronicles 21:15](#); [1 Chronicles 22:16](#); [1 Chronicles 22:18](#); [1 Chronicles 26:26](#); [1 Chronicles 27:2](#); [1 Chronicles 27:6](#); [1 Chronicles 27:25](#); [1 Chronicles 27:28](#); [1 Chronicles 27:30](#); [1 Chronicles 28:1](#); [1 Chronicles 28:2](#); [1 Chronicles 28:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:19](#); [1 Chronicles 28:20](#); [1 Chronicles 29:6](#); [1 Chronicles 29:22](#)



# Introduction of a New Event

## Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages, people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Order of Events* ([UTA PDF](#))

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

## Examples From the Bible

**In the days of Herod**, king of Judea, **there was a certain priest named Zechariah**, from the division of Abijah. And **his wife was** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first bolded phrase tells when it happened, and the next two bolded phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “And it happened that” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

**And it happened that** in his performing as priest before God, in the order of his division, according to the custom of the priesthood, he came up by lot to enter into the temple of the Lord to burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

**The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.** His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The bolded sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

**Now after Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king**, behold, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem. (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened **after** Jesus was born.

**Now in those days** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea. (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The bolded phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

**Then** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to John, to be baptized by him. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.  
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages, it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

6 Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. 7 Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a statement of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

## Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies:

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
- (3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
- (4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, indicate that the event would actually happen later in the story.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was **a man from the Pharisees whose name was Nicodemus, a Jewish leader**.  
This man came to Jesus at night. (John 3:1-2a ULT)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**. One night he came to Jesus.

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council**, came to Jesus.

As he passed by, **he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, sitting** at the tax collector's tent, and he said to him ... (Mark 2:14a ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collector's tent. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collector's tent. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him ...

(2) If readers would expect certain information, but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as “another time,” or “someone.”

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) — If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase “after that” can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

**After that**, when Noah was 600 years old, the flood came upon the earth.

**Again he began** to teach beside the sea. (Mark 4:1a ULT) — In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone’s house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the sea.

**Another time** Jesus began to teach people again beside the sea.

Jesus went to the sea and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language’s way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old and the flood came upon the earth.

**This part tells about what happened when** the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was 600 years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was 600 years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

**Now this is what happened when** Noah was 600 years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons’ wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Background Information* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Introduction of New and Old Participants* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 17:1](#)

# Merism

## Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

"I am **the alpha and the omega**," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Alpha and omega** are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

**Heaven and earth** is a merism that includes everything that exists.

## Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

## Examples From the Bible

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere."

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone."

## Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

**From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

**In all places**, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 9:33](#); [1 Chronicles 16:36](#); [1 Chronicles 21:2](#); [1 Chronicles 25:8](#); [1 Chronicles 26:13](#)

# Metaphor

## Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Simile* ([UTA PDF](#))

## The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

## Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page in

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

## Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

## Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.  
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator’s special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is “I” (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is “bread.” Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is “life.” In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

## Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

## Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

## Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (“you,” the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material.



The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**"  
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we did not take bread."  
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
- (3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
- (4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
- (5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
- (6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
- (7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
- (8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him.**

- (2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart.**" (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

“And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand.” “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**. Now you gather fish.

I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#).

"

**Referenced in:** [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 2:3](#); [1 Chronicles 10:9](#); [1 Chronicles 11:2](#); [1 Chronicles 11:19](#); [1 Chronicles 12:18](#); [1 Chronicles 12:23](#); [1 Chronicles 13:4](#); [1 Chronicles 13:10](#); [1 Chronicles 14:15](#); [1 Chronicles 17:6](#); [1 Chronicles 17:8](#); [1 Chronicles 17:9](#); [1 Chronicles 17:11](#); [1 Chronicles 17:17](#); [1 Chronicles 19:6](#); [1 Chronicles 19:13](#); [1 Chronicles 21:17](#); [1 Chronicles 22:10](#); [1 Chronicles 22:19](#); [1 Chronicles 24:4](#); [1 Chronicles 25:5](#); [1 Chronicles 28:6](#); [1 Chronicles 29:12](#); [1 Chronicles 29:15](#)

# Metonymy

## Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

## Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

## Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

## Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.” or:  
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

”

**Referenced in:** 1 Chronicles 2:3; 1 Chronicles 4:10; 1 Chronicles 4:38; 1 Chronicles 5:18; 1 Chronicles 6:10; 1 Chronicles 6:39; 1 Chronicles 9:19; 1 Chronicles 10:4; 1 Chronicles 10:5; 1 Chronicles 11:4; 1 Chronicles 11:8; 1 Chronicles 13:14; 1 Chronicles 14:11; 1 Chronicles 15:1; 1 Chronicles 15:13; 1 Chronicles 15:29; 1 Chronicles 16:2; 1 Chronicles 16:3; 1 Chronicles 16:8; 1 Chronicles 16:10; 1 Chronicles 16:12; 1 Chronicles 16:14; 1 Chronicles 16:23; 1 Chronicles 16:29; 1 Chronicles 16:30; 1 Chronicles 16:35; 1 Chronicles 17:2; 1 Chronicles 17:7; 1 Chronicles 17:8; 1 Chronicles 17:10; 1 Chronicles 17:12; 1 Chronicles 17:14; 1 Chronicles 17:15; 1 Chronicles 17:21; 1 Chronicles 17:24; 1 Chronicles 17:25; 1 Chronicles 18:3; 1 Chronicles 19:4; 1 Chronicles 19:16; 1 Chronicles 20:1; 1 Chronicles 20:3; 1 Chronicles 21:5; 1 Chronicles 21:12; 1 Chronicles 21:13; 1 Chronicles 21:14; 1 Chronicles 21:15; 1 Chronicles 21:17; 1 Chronicles 21:19; 1 Chronicles 21:23; 1 Chronicles 21:30; 1 Chronicles 22:5; 1 Chronicles 22:6; 1 Chronicles 22:7; 1 Chronicles 22:8; 1 Chronicles 22:10; 1 Chronicles 22:11; 1 Chronicles 22:18; 1 Chronicles 22:19; 1 Chronicles 23:13; 1 Chronicles 27:23; 1 Chronicles 27:24; 1 Chronicles 28:3; 1 Chronicles 28:4; 1 Chronicles 28:5; 1 Chronicles 28:9; 1 Chronicles 29:13; 1 Chronicles 29:17; 1 Chronicles 29:18; 1 Chronicles 29:21; 1 Chronicles 29:23

## Nominal Adjectives

### Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds.  
(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

**He will not be rich;** his wealth will not last. (Job 15:29a ULT)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

**The rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15b ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Parts of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

### Examples From the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

### Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

### Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3a ULT)

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **righteous people**.

Blessed are **the meek**. (Matthew 5:5a ULT)

Blessed are **people who are meek**.

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 10:4](#)

# Numbers

## Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Translate Unknowns* ([UTA PDF](#))

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

## Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

## Examples From the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
- (4) Combine words for large numbers.
- (5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

## Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

## Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years.

He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.  
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Fractions \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** 1 Chronicles 2:4; 1 Chronicles 3:4; 1 Chronicles 4:27; 1 Chronicles 4:42; 1 Chronicles 5:18; 1 Chronicles 5:21; 1 Chronicles 6:62; 1 Chronicles 7:2; 1 Chronicles 7:4; 1 Chronicles 7:5; 1 Chronicles 7:7; 1 Chronicles 7:9; 1 Chronicles 7:11; 1 Chronicles 7:40; 1 Chronicles 8:40; 1 Chronicles 9:6; 1 Chronicles 9:9; 1 Chronicles 9:13; 1 Chronicles 9:22; 1 Chronicles 9:25; 1 Chronicles 10:12; 1 Chronicles 11:15; 1 Chronicles 11:18; 1 Chronicles 11:20; 1 Chronicles 11:42; 1 Chronicles 12:4; 1 Chronicles 12:14; 1 Chronicles 12:18; 1 Chronicles 12:20; 1 Chronicles 12:23; 1 Chronicles 12:24; 1 Chronicles 12:25; 1 Chronicles 12:26; 1 Chronicles 12:27; 1 Chronicles 12:28; 1 Chronicles 12:29; 1 Chronicles 12:30; 1 Chronicles 12:31; 1 Chronicles 12:32; 1 Chronicles 12:33; 1 Chronicles 12:34; 1 Chronicles 12:35; 1 Chronicles 12:36; 1 Chronicles 12:37; 1 Chronicles 12:39; 1 Chronicles 13:1; 1 Chronicles 13:14; 1 Chronicles 15:5; 1 Chronicles 15:6; 1 Chronicles 15:25; 1 Chronicles 16:15; 1 Chronicles 16:38; 1 Chronicles 18:4; 1 Chronicles 18:5; 1 Chronicles 18:12; 1 Chronicles 19:6; 1 Chronicles 19:7; 1 Chronicles 19:18; 1 Chronicles 21:5; 1 Chronicles 21:14; 1 Chronicles 21:25; 1 Chronicles 22:14; 1 Chronicles 23:3; 1 Chronicles 23:4; 1 Chronicles 23:24; 1 Chronicles 23:27; 1 Chronicles 24:4; 1 Chronicles 25:5; 1 Chronicles 25:7; 1 Chronicles 25:9; 1 Chronicles 25:10; 1 Chronicles 25:11; 1 Chronicles 25:12; 1 Chronicles 25:13; 1 Chronicles 25:14; 1 Chronicles 25:15; 1 Chronicles 25:16; 1 Chronicles 25:17; 1 Chronicles 25:18; 1 Chronicles 25:19; 1 Chronicles 25:20; 1 Chronicles 25:21; 1 Chronicles 25:22; 1 Chronicles 25:23; 1 Chronicles 25:24; 1 Chronicles 25:25; 1 Chronicles 25:26; 1 Chronicles 25:27; 1 Chronicles 25:28; 1 Chronicles 25:29; 1 Chronicles 25:30; 1 Chronicles 25:31; 1 Chronicles 26:8; 1 Chronicles 26:9; 1 Chronicles 26:11; 1 Chronicles 26:17; 1 Chronicles 26:26; 1 Chronicles 26:30; 1 Chronicles 26:32; 1 Chronicles 27:1; 1 Chronicles 27:2; 1 Chronicles 27:4; 1 Chronicles 27:5; 1 Chronicles 27:6; 1 Chronicles 27:7; 1 Chronicles 27:8; 1 Chronicles 27:9; 1 Chronicles 27:10; 1 Chronicles 27:11; 1 Chronicles 27:12; 1 Chronicles 27:13; 1 Chronicles 27:14; 1 Chronicles 27:15; 1 Chronicles 27:23; 1 Chronicles 28:1; 1 Chronicles 29:6; 1 Chronicles 29:7; 1 Chronicles 29:21; 1 Chronicles 29:27

## Ordinal Numbers

### Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers \(UTA PDF\)](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

### Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

### Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

## Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions \(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 8:39](#); [1 Chronicles 15:18](#); [1 Chronicles 16:5](#); [1 Chronicles 24:7](#); [1 Chronicles 24:8](#); [1 Chronicles 24:9](#); [1 Chronicles 24:10](#); [1 Chronicles 24:11](#); [1 Chronicles 24:12](#); [1 Chronicles 24:13](#); [1 Chronicles 24:14](#); [1](#)

Chronicles 24:15; 1 Chronicles 24:16; 1 Chronicles 24:17; 1 Chronicles 24:18; 1 Chronicles 24:23; 1 Chronicles 25:9; 1  
Chronicles 25:10; 1 Chronicles 25:11; 1 Chronicles 25:12; 1 Chronicles 25:13; 1 Chronicles 25:14; 1 Chronicles 25:15;  
1 Chronicles 25:16; 1 Chronicles 25:17; 1 Chronicles 25:18; 1 Chronicles 25:19; 1 Chronicles 25:20; 1 Chronicles  
25:21; 1 Chronicles 25:22; 1 Chronicles 25:23; 1 Chronicles 25:24; 1 Chronicles 25:25; 1 Chronicles 25:26; 1  
Chronicles 25:27; 1 Chronicles 25:28; 1 Chronicles 25:29; 1 Chronicles 25:30; 1 Chronicles 25:31; 1 Chronicles 26:2; 1  
Chronicles 26:3; 1 Chronicles 26:4; 1 Chronicles 26:5; 1 Chronicles 26:11; 1 Chronicles 26:31

# Parallelism

## Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "doublet" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

## Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet  
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;  
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

Yahweh sees everything a person does  
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;  
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,  
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

## Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.  
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.  
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Personification* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 11:2](#); [1 Chronicles 12:18](#); [1 Chronicles 16:13](#); [1 Chronicles 16:15](#); [1 Chronicles 16:16](#); [1 Chronicles 16:20](#); [1 Chronicles 17:11](#); [1 Chronicles 17:14](#); [1 Chronicles 17:18](#); [1 Chronicles 17:20](#); [1 Chronicles 17:27](#); [1 Chronicles 22:13](#); [1 Chronicles 28:2](#); [1 Chronicles 28:3](#); [1 Chronicles 28:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:9](#); [1 Chronicles 28:20](#); [1 Chronicles 29:25](#)



# Personification

## Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

## Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

## Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

**Sin crouches** at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

**Sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

**NOTE:** We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Apostrophe* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 14:17](#); [1 Chronicles 16:27](#); [1 Chronicles 16:31](#); [1 Chronicles 16:32](#); [1 Chronicles 16:33](#)

# Poetry

## Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Writing Styles* ([UTA PDF](#))

## In poetry we commonly find:

- many figures of speech such as [Apostrophe](#)
- arrangements of clauses into particular patterns such as:
  - parallel lines (See [Parallelism](#))
  - acrostics (beginning lines with successive letters of the alphabet)
  - chiasms (in which the first line relates to the last line, the second to the next-to-last line, etc.):

You should not give what is holy to the dogs,  
and should not throw your pearls in front of the pigs.  
Otherwise they will trample them under their feet,  
and having turned, they might tear you to pieces. (Matt 7:6 ULT)

- repetition of some or all of a line:

Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his hosts. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars. (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- lines of similar length:

Listen to my call to you,  
Yahweh; think about my groanings.  
Listen to the sound of my call, my King and my God,  
for it is to you that I pray. (Psalm 5:1-2 ULT)

- the same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines:

"Twinkle, twinkle little **star**. How I wonder what you **are**." (from an English rhyme)

- the same sound repeated many times:

"Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)

- The same root word used as both a verb and as a noun:

Your old men will **dream dreams** (Joel 2:28 ULT)

Yahweh,...**light lightning** and scatter them (Psalm 144:5-6 ULT)

We also find:

- old words and expressions
- dramatic imagery
- different use of grammar — including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

## Some places to look for poetry in your language

Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games

Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors

Prayers, blessings, and curses

Old legends

## Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language, you may need to write it without the poetry.
- Different languages use different poetic devices. A poetic device that conveys elegance or emotion in a biblical language may be confusing or misunderstood in another language.
- In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

## Examples From the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely made up of poetry.

... for you saw my affliction; you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7b ULT)

This example of [Parallelism](#) has two lines that mean the same thing.

Yahweh, judge the nations; vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High. (Psalm 7:8 ULT)

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See [Parallelism](#).)

Keep your servant also from arrogant sins; let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13a ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See [Personification](#).)

Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good,  
for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.  
  
Oh, give thanks to the God of gods,

for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords,

for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.

(Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases “give thanks” and “his covenant faithfulness endures forever.”

## Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked, or stand in the pathway with sinners, or sit in the assembly of mockers. But his delight is in the law of Yahweh, and on his law he meditates day and night. (Psalm 1:1-2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1-2.

- (1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

“Happy is the person not encouraged **to sin**, Disrespect for God he will  
not **begin**, To those who laugh at God he is **no kin**. God is his constant  
**delight**, He does what God says **is right**, He thinks of it all day **and night**.”

- (2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not  
follow the advice of wicked people nor stop along the road to speak with  
sinners nor join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather, he takes  
great joy in Yahweh’s law, and he meditates on it day and night.

- (3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy.  
They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or join  
with those who do not respect God. Instead, they love to obey Yahweh’s  
law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Symbolic Language* ([UTA PDF](#))

# Quotes within Quotes

## Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Direct and Indirect Quotations* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes.

They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.

Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

## Examples From the Bible

### A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

### Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

### A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

### A quotation with four layers

They said to him, “A man came to meet us who said to us, ‘Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, “Yahweh says this: **‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.’**”” (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

## Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, '**Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?**' But when Paul said, '**I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,**' I told the guard, '**Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.**'"

- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Quote Markings [\(UTA PDF\)](#)

Next we recommend you learn about:

Quote Markings [\(UTA PDF\)](#)

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 17:4](#); [1 Chronicles 17:6](#)



## Reflexive Pronouns

### Description

All languages have ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. English does this by using reflexive pronouns. These are pronouns that refer to someone or something that has already been mentioned in a sentence. In English the reflexive pronouns are: “myself,” “yourself,” “himself,” “herself,” “itself,” “ourselves,” “yourselves,” and “themselves.” Other languages may have other ways to show this.

This page answers the question: *What are reflexive pronouns?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns \(UTA PDF\)](#)

[Sentence Structure \(UTA PDF\)](#)

### Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of showing that the same person fills two different roles in a sentence. For those languages, translators will need to know how to translate the English reflexive pronouns.
- The reflexive pronouns in English also have other functions.

### Uses of Reflexive Pronouns

- To show that the same person or things fills two different roles in a sentence
- To emphasize a person or thing in the sentence
- To show that someone did something alone
- To show that someone or something was alone

### Examples From the Bible

Reflexive pronouns are used to show the same person or thing fills two different roles in a sentence.

If **I** should testify about **myself**, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31 ULT)

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and **many** went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to purify **themselves**. (John 11:55 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to emphasize a person or thing in the sentence.

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2 ULT)

So they left the crowd, taking Jesus with them, just as he was, in the boat. There also were other boats with him. Then a violent windstorm arose and the waves were breaking into the boat so that the boat was already full of water. But **Jesus himself** was in the stern, asleep on the cushion. (Mark 4:36-38a ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone did something alone.

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15 ULT)

Reflexive pronouns are used to show that someone or something was alone.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. **It** was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

If a reflexive pronoun would have the same function in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other strategies.

(1) In some languages people put something on the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject. (2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence. (3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. (4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.” (5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) In some languages people modify the verb to show that the object of the verb is the same as the subject.

If I should testify about **myself** alone, my testimony would not be true. (John 5:31)

“If I should **self-testify** alone, my testimony would not be true.”

Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem from the country before the Passover in order to **purify themselves**. (John 11:55)

“Now the Passover of the Jews was near, and many went up to Jerusalem out from country before the Passover in order to **self-purify**.”

(2) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by referring to it in a special place in the sentence.

**He himself** took our sickness and bore our diseases. (Matthew 8:17 ULT)

“**It was he who** took our sickness and bore our diseases.”

**Jesus himself** was not baptizing, but his disciples were. (John 4:2)

“**It was not Jesus who** was baptizing, but his disciples were.”

(3) In some languages people emphasize a certain person or thing by adding something to that word or putting another word with it. English adds the reflexive pronoun.

But Jesus said this to test Philip, for he **himself** knew what he was going to do. (John 6:6)

(4) In some languages people show that someone did something alone by using a word like “alone.”

When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again up the mountain **by himself**. (John 6:15)

“When Jesus realized that they were about to come and seize him by force to make him king, he withdrew again **alone** up the mountain.”

(5) In some languages people show that something was alone by using a phrase that tells about where it was.

He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up in a place **by itself**. (John 20:6b-7 ULT)

“He saw the linen cloths lying there and the cloth that had been on his head. It was not lying with the linen cloths but was folded up and lying **in its own place**.”

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 22:7](#)

## Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Sentence Types* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **"Are you insulting the high priest of God?"**(Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

## Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

## Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

(1) Add the answer after the question. (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation. (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question. (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

**What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?** It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

**This is what the kingdom of God is like.** It is like a mustard seed ...

**Are you insulting the high priest of God?** (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

**You should not insult God's high priest!**

**Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11a ULT)

**I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!**

**And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULT)

**How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!**

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

**Do you not still rule** the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

**Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

**What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 13:12](#); [1 Chronicles 17:6](#); [1 Chronicles 17:16](#); [1 Chronicles 17:18](#); [1 Chronicles 17:21](#); [1 Chronicles 19:3](#); [1 Chronicles 21:3](#); [1 Chronicles 21:17](#); [1 Chronicles 29:14](#)

# Simile

## Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

## Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

## Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lightning flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience. (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote. (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)



How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Metaphor* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 14:11](#); [1 Chronicles 27:23](#); [1 Chronicles 29:15](#)

# Symbolic Action

## Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Translate Unknowns* ([UTA PDF](#))

## Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

## Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

## Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
- (3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 11:3](#); [1 Chronicles 21:16](#); [1 Chronicles 21:21](#); [1 Chronicles 21:27](#); [1 Chronicles 29:20](#)

# Symbolic Language

## Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Writing Styles ([UTA PDF](#))

■ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

## Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

## Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

## Examples From the Bible

■ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

■ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

■ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven stars** in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven

golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

## Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, <sup>1</sup> terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; <sup>2</sup> it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. <sup>3</sup>

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom. [2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army. [3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

"

Referenced in: [1 Chronicles 21:16](#)

# Synecdoche

## Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

## Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

## Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

## Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ “**My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ “**I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

■ I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Figures of Speech* ([UTA PDF](#))

Metonymy ([UTA PDF](#))

Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies ([UTA PDF](#))

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy ([UTA PDF](#))

Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 5:10](#); [1 Chronicles 6:15](#); [1 Chronicles 10:12](#); [1 Chronicles 12:8](#); [1 Chronicles 12:40](#); [1 Chronicles 16:10](#); [1 Chronicles 19:17](#); [1 Chronicles 20:2](#); [1 Chronicles 20:3](#); [1 Chronicles 20:8](#); [1 Chronicles 22:19](#); [1 Chronicles 28:8](#); [1 Chronicles 28:9](#)

## Textual Variants

### Description

Thousands of years ago, people wrote the books of the Bible. Other people then copied them by hand and translated them. They did this work very carefully, and over the years many people made thousands of copies. However, people who looked at them later saw that there were small differences between them. Some copiers accidentally left out some words, or some mistook one word for another that looked like it. Occasionally, they added words or even whole sentences, either by accident or because they wanted to explain something. Modern Bibles are translations of the old copies. Some modern Bibles include some of these sentences that were added. In the ULT, these added sentences are usually written in footnotes.

This page answers the question: *Why does the ULT have missing or added verses, and should I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Choosing a Source Text* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Original Manuscripts* ([UTA PDF](#))

Bible scholars have read many old copies and compared them with each other. For each place in the Bible where there was a difference, they have figured out which wordings are most likely correct. The translators of the ULT based the ULT on wordings that scholars say are most likely correct. Because people who use the ULT may have access to Bibles that are based on other copies, the ULT translators have sometimes included information about some of the differences between them, either in the ULT footnotes or in the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes.

Translators are encouraged to translate the text in the ULT and to write about added sentences in footnotes, as is done in the ULT. However, if the local church really wants those sentences to be included in the main text, translators may put them in the text and include a footnote about them.

### Examples From the Bible

Matthew 18:10-11 ULT has a footnote about verse 11.

<sup>10</sup> See that you do not despise one of these little ones. For I say to you that in heaven their angels always look on the face of my Father who is in heaven. <sup>11</sup> <sup>[1]</sup>

<sup>[1]</sup> Many authorities, some ancient, insert v. 11: **For the Son of Man came to save that which was lost.**

John 7:53-8:11 is not in the best earliest manuscripts. It has been included in the ULT, but it is marked off with square brackets ([ ]) at the beginning and end, and there is a footnote after verse 11.

53 [Then everyone went to his own house ... 11 She said, "No one, Lord." Jesus said, "Neither do I condemn you. Go and sin no more."] <sup>[2]</sup>

<sup>[2]</sup> Some ancient manuscripts include John 7:53-8:11

### Translation Strategies

When there is a textual variant, you may choose to follow the ULT or another version that you have access to.

- (1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.
- (2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.



## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The translation strategies are applied to Mark 7:14-16 ULT, which has a footnote about verse 16.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(1) Translate the verses as they are in the ULT and include the footnote that the ULT provides.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man." <sup>16</sup> [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts include verse 16: **If any man has ears to hear, let him hear.**

(2) Translate the verses as another version has them, and change the footnote so that it fits this situation.

<sup>14</sup> He called the crowd again and said to them, "Listen to me, all of you, and understand. <sup>15</sup> There is nothing from outside the man that can defile him when it enters into him. But the things that come out of the man are the things that defile the man. <sup>16</sup> If any man has ears to hear, let him hear." [1]

[1] Some ancient manuscripts do not include verse 16.

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Chapter and Verse Numbers* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Original Manuscripts* ([UTA PDF](#))

*Terms to Know* ([UTA PDF](#))

*The Original and Source Languages* ([UTA PDF](#))

Referenced in: [1 Chronicles 1:7](#)

## Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Sentence Structure \(UTA PDF\)](#)

## Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

## Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

## Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

## Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

## Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT) —  
People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made  
of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread**  
and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Copy or Borrow Words* ([UTA PDF](#))

*How to Translate Names* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 4:21](#); [1 Chronicles 11:8](#); [1 Chronicles 13:8](#); [1 Chronicles 15:16](#); [1 Chronicles 15:19](#); [1 Chronicles 15:20](#); [1 Chronicles 15:21](#); [1 Chronicles 15:28](#); [1 Chronicles 16:5](#); [1 Chronicles 16:42](#); [1 Chronicles 21:23](#); [1 Chronicles 25:1](#); [1 Chronicles 25:6](#); [1 Chronicles 27:28](#)

# Verse Bridges

## Description

In some cases, you will see in the unfoldingWord® Simplified Text (UST) that two or more verse numbers are combined, such as 17-18. This is called a verse bridge. This means that the information in the verses was rearranged so that the story or message could be more easily understood.

This page answers the question: *Why are some verse numbers combined in the UST, such as "3-5" or "17-18"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

*Structure of the Bible* ([UTA PDF](#))

29 These were the clans of the Horites: Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, and Anah, 30 Dishon, Ezer, Dishan: these are clans of the Horites, according to their clan lists in the land of Seir. (Genesis 36:29-30 ULT)

29-30 The people groups who were descendants of Hor lived in Seir land. The names of the people groups are Lotan, Shobal, Zibeon, Anah, Dishon, Ezer, and Dishan. (Genesis 36:29-30 UST)

In the ULT text, verses 29 and 30 are separate, and the information about the people living in Seir is at the end of verse 30. In the UST text, the verses are joined, and the information about them living in Seir is at the beginning. For many languages, this is a more logical order of information.

## Examples From the Bible

Where the UST has a verse bridge, the ULT will have separate verses.

<sup>4-5</sup> Yahweh our God will bless you in the land that he is giving to you. If you obey Yahweh our God and obey all the commandments that I am giving to you today, there will not be any poor people among you. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 UST)

<sup>4</sup> However, there should be no poor among you (for Yahweh will surely bless you in the land that he gives you as an inheritance to possess), <sup>5</sup> if only you diligently listen to the voice of Yahweh your God, to keep all these commandments that I am commanding you today. (Deuteronomy 15:4-5 ULT)

<sup>16-17</sup> But Yahweh said to him, "I will not permit you to eat the fruit of the tree that will enable you to know what actions are good to do and what actions are evil to do. If you eat any fruit from that tree, on the day you eat it you will surely die. But I will permit you to eat the fruit of any of the other trees in the park." (Genesis 2:16-17 UST)

<sup>16</sup> Yahweh God commanded the man, saying, "From every tree in the garden you may freely eat. <sup>17</sup> But from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil you may not eat, for on the day that you eat from it, you will surely die." (Genesis 2:16-17 ULT)

## Translation Strategies

Order the information in a way that will be clear to your readers. If the order of information is clear as it is in the ULT, then use that order. But if the order is confusing or gives the wrong meaning, then change the order so that it is more clear.

(1) If you put information from one verse before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put a hyphen between the two verse numbers.

See how to mark verses in [translationStudio](#).

## Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If information from one verse is put before information from an earlier verse, then combine the verses and put the verse numbers before the first verse with a hyphen between them.

2 You must select three cities for yourself in the middle of your land that Yahweh your God is giving you to possess. 3 You must build a road and divide the borders of your land into three parts, the land that Yahweh your God is causing you to inherit, so that everyone who kills another person may flee there. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 ULT)

2-3 You must divide into three parts the land that he is giving to you. Then select a city in each part. You must make good roads in order that people can get to those cities easily. Someone who kills another person can escape to one of those cities to be safe. (Deuteronomy 19:2-3 UST)

Next we recommend you learn about:

*Chapter and Verse Numbers* ([UTA PDF](#))

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 4:13](#); [1 Chronicles 4:17](#); [1 Chronicles 6:78](#); [1 Chronicles 6:79](#); [1 Chronicles 8:17](#); [1 Chronicles 8:19](#); [1 Chronicles 8:20](#); [1 Chronicles 8:22](#); [1 Chronicles 8:26](#)



# **unfoldingWord® Translation Words**

**Version 75**

## covenant

### Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts of those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26



- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

"

Referenced in: [Introduction to 1 Chronicles](#); [1 Chronicles 13 General Notes](#)

## eternity, everlasting, eternal, forever

### Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.

The term “forever” refers to never-ending time.

- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like. It emphasizes that something will always happen or exist. It refers to time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- “Forever” could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: [David](#), [reign](#), [life](#))

### Bible References:

- Genesis 17:8
- Genesis 48:4
- Exodus 15:17
- 2 Samuel 3:28-30
- 1 Kings 2:32-33
- Job 4:20-21
- Psalms 21:4
- Isaiah 9:6-7
- Isaiah 40:27-28
- Daniel 7:18

- Luke 18:18
- Acts 13:46
- Romans 5:21
- Hebrews 6:19-20
- Hebrews 10:11-14
- 1 John 1:2
- 1 John 5:12
- Revelation 1:4-6
- Revelation 22:3-5

## Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:1** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3117, H4481, H5331, H5703, H5705, H5769, H5865, H5957, H6924, G01260, G01650, G01660, G13360

"

Referenced in: [1 Chronicles 17 General Notes](#)

## priest, priesthood

### Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), [high priest](#), [mediator](#), [sacrifice](#))

### Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 15 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 16 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#)

## temple, house, house of God

### Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

### Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

### Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

### Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

## Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

"

**Referenced in:** [1 Chronicles 18 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 22 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 23 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 24 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 25 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 26 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 27 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 28 General Notes](#); [1 Chronicles 29 General Notes](#)

# Contributors

## unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs



Cheryl A Chojnacki  
Cheryl Stieben  
Cheryl Warren  
Christian Berry  
Christine Harrison  
Clairmene Pascal  
Connie Bryan  
Connie Goss  
Craig Balden  
Craig Lins  
Craig Scott  
Cynthia J Puckett  
Dale Hahs  
Dale Masser  
Daniel Lauk  
Daniel Summers  
Darlene M Hopkins  
Darlene Silas  
David Boerschlein  
David F Withee  
David Glover  
David J Forbes  
David Mullen  
David N Hanley  
David Sandlin  
David Shortess  
David Smith  
David Whisler  
Debbie Nispel  
Debbie Piper  
Deborah Bartow  
Deborah Bush  
Deborah Miniard  
Dennis Jackson  
Dianne Forrest  
Donna Borkenhagen  
Donna Mullis  
Douglas Hayes  
Drew Curley  
Ed Davis  
Edgar Navera  
Edward Kosky  
Edward Quigley  
Elaine VanRegenmorter  
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas  
Ellen Lee  
Emeline Thermidor  
Emily Lee  
Esther Roman  
Esther Trew  
Esther Zirk  
Ethel Lynn Baker  
Evangeline Puen  
Evelyn Wildgust  
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble  
Gail Spell  
Gary Greer  
Gary Shogren  
Gay Ellen Stulp  
Gene Gossman  
George Arlyn Briggs  
Gerald L. Naughton  
Glen Tallent  
Grace Balwit  
Grace Bird  
Greg Stoffregen  
Gretchen Stencil  
Hallie Miller  
Harry Harriss  
Heather Hicks  
Helen Morse  
Hendrik deVries  
Henry Bult  
Henry Whitney  
Hilary O'Sullivan  
Ibrahim Audu  
Ines Gipson  
Irene J Dodson  
Jackie Jones  
Jacqueline Bartley  
James Giddens  
James Pedersen  
James Pohlig  
James Roe  
Janet O'Herron  
Janice Connor  
Jaqueline Rotruck  
Jeanette Friesen  
Jeff Graf  
Jeff Kennedy  
Jeff Martin  
Jennifer Cunneen  
Jenny Thomas  
Jerry Lund  
Jessica Lauk  
Jim Frederick  
Jim Lee  
Jimmy Warren  
Jim Rotruck  
Jim Swartzentruber  
Jody Garcia  
Joe Chater  
Joel Bryan  
Joey Howell  
John Anderson  
John Geddis  
John D Rogers  
John Hutchins  
John Luton

John Pace  
John P Tornifolio  
Jolene Valeu  
Jon Haahr  
Joseph Fithian  
Joseph Greene  
Joseph Wharton  
Joshua Berkowitz  
Joshua Calhoun  
Joshua Rister  
Josh Wondra  
Joy Anderson  
Joyce Jacobs  
Joyce Pedersen  
JT Crowder  
Judi Brodeen  
Judith Cline  
Judith C Yon  
Julia N Bult  
Patty Li  
Julie Susanto  
Kahar Barat  
Kannah Sellers  
Kara Anderson  
Karen Davie  
Karen Dreesen  
Karen Fabean  
Karen Riecks  
Karen Smith  
Karen Turner  
Kathleen Glover  
Kathryn Hendrix  
Kathy Mentink  
Katrina Geurink  
Kay Myers  
Kelly Strong  
Ken Haugh  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Kristin Butts Page  
Kristin Rinne  
Kwesi Opoku-debrah  
Langston Spell  
Larry Sallee  
Lawrence Lipe  
Lee Sipe  
Leonard Smith  
Lester Harper  
Lia Hadley  
Linda Buckman  
Linda Dale Barton  
Linda Havemeier  
Linda Homer  
Linda Lee Sebastien  
Linn Peterson  
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box  
Luis Keelin  
Madeline Kilmore  
Maggie D Paul  
Marc Nelson  
Mardi Welo  
Margo Hoffman  
Marilyn Cook  
Marjean Swann  
Marjorie Francis  
Mark Albertini  
Mark Chapman  
Mark Thomas  
Marselene Norton  
Mary Jane Davis  
Mary Jean Stout  
Mary Landon  
Mary Scarborough  
Megan Kidwell  
Melissa Roe  
Merton Dibble  
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede  
Michael Bush  
Michael Connor  
Michael Francis  
Michael Geurink  
Mike Tisdell  
Mickey White  
Miel Horrilleno  
Monique Greer  
Morgan Mellette  
Morris Anderson  
Nancy C. Naughton  
Nancy Neu  
Nancy VanCott  
Neal Snook  
Nicholas Scovil  
Nick Dettman  
Nils Friberg  
Noah Crabtree  
Pamela B Johnston  
Pamela Nungesser  
Pamela Roberts  
Pam Gullifer  
Pat Ankney  
Pat Giddens  
Patricia Brougher  
Patricia Carson  
Patricia Cleveland  
Patricia Foster  
Patricia Middlebrooks  
Paul Mellema  
Paula Carlson  
Paula Oestreich  
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser  
Peggy Anderson  
Peggyrose Swartzentruber  
Peter Polloni  
Phillip Harms  
Phyllis Mortensen  
Priscilla Enggren  
Rachel Agheyisi  
Rachel Ropp  
Raif Turner  
Ray Puen  
Reina Y Mora  
Rene Bahrenfuss  
Renee Triplett  
Rhonda Bartels  
Richard Beatty  
Richard Moreau  
Richard Rutter  
Richard Stevens  
Rick Keaton  
Robby Little  
Robert W Johnson  
Rochelle Hook  
Rodney White  
Rolaine Franz  
Ronald D Hook  
Rosario Baria  
Roxann Carey  
Roxanne Pittard  
Ruben Michael Garay  
Russell Isham  
Russ Perry  
Ruth Calo  
Ruth E Withee  
Ruth Montgomery  
Ryan Blizek  
Sam Todd  
Samuel Njuguna  
Sandy Anderson  
Sandy Blanes  
Sara Giesmann  
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)  
Sharon Johnson  
Sharon Peterson  
Sharon Shortess  
Shelly Harms  
Sherie Nelson  
Sherman Sebastien  
Sherry Mosher  
Stacey Swanson  
Steve Gibbs  
Steve Mercier  
Susan Langohr  
Susan Quigley  
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards  
Sylvia Thomas  
Sze Suze Lau  
Tabitha Price  
Tammy L Enns  
Tammy White  
Teresa Everett-Leone  
Teresa Linn  
Terri Collins  
Theresa Baker  
Thomas Jopling  
Thomas Nickell  
Thomas Warren  
Tim Coleman  
Tim Ingram  
Tim Linn  
Tim Lovestrand  
Tim Mentink  
Tom Penry  
Tom William Warren  
Toni Shuma  
Tracie Pogue  
Tricia Coffman  
Vicki Ivester  
Victoria G DeKraker  
Victor M Prieto  
Vivian Kamph  
Vivian Richardson  
Ward Pyles  
Warren Blaisdell  
Wayne Homer  
Wendy Coleman  
Wendy Colon  
Wilbur Zirk  
Wil Gipson  
William Carson  
William Cline  
William Dickerson  
William Smitherman  
William Wilder  
Yvonne Tallent

## **unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
Scott Bayer  
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
Matt Carlton  
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
Dan Dennison  
Jamie Duguid  
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
Michael Francis  
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Jack Messarra  
 Gene Mullen  
 Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
 Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
 Kristy Nickell  
 Tom Nickell  
 Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
 Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
 James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
 Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
 Dean Ropp  
 Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
 Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
 Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
 Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary  
 Leonard Smith  
 Suzanna Smith  
 Tim Span  
 Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
 Maria Tijerina  
 David Trombold, M. Div.  
 Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary  
 James Vigen  
 Hendrik "Henry" de Vries  
 Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
 Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
 Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
 Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
 Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
 Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors**

Nicholas Alsop  
 Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary  
 Matt Carlton  
 George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages  
 Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary  
 Michael Francis  
 Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation  
 Kailey Gregory  
 Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
 C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.  
 Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.  
 Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.  
 John Huffman  
 D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament  
 Robert Hunt

Demsin Lachin  
Jack Messarra  
Gene Mullen  
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University  
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies  
Kristy Nickell  
Tom Nickell  
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Dean Ropp  
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy  
Christopher Smith, M.A.T.S. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary, Ph.D. Boston College  
Leonard Smith  
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary  
David Trombold, M. Div.  
James Vigen  
Hendrik ♦ Henry ♦ de Vries  
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary  
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)  
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics  
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors**

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies  
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics  
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics  
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages  
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.  
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology  
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics  
Bev Staley  
Carol Brinneman  
Jody Garcia  
Kara Anderson  
Kim Puterbaugh  
Lizz Carlton  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors**

Andrew Belcher  
David Book  
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages  
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982-2000  
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary  
Lizz Carlton



Jan Zanutto  
Matthew Latham  
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics  
Richard Joki  
Door43 World Missions Community

## **unfoldingWord® Translation Words Links Contributors**

Door43 World Missions Community  
Jesse Griffin (BA Biblical Studies, Liberty University; MA Biblical Languages, Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary)  
Perry Oakes (BA Biblical Studies, Taylor University; MA Theology, Fuller Seminary; MA Linguistics, University of Texas at Arlington; PhD Old Testament, Southwestern Baptist Theological Seminary)  
Larry Sallee (Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary)  
Joel D. Ruark (M.A.Th. Gordon-Conwell Theological Seminary; Th.M. Stellenbosch University; Ph.D. Candidate in Old Testament Studies, Stellenbosch University)